Foreword

Thank you for choosing BYD. To better use and maintain the vehicle, please read this manual carefully before use and keep it for future reference.

Special instructions: BYD recommends that you choose genuine spare parts and use, maintain, and repair the vehicle in accordance with this manual. The use of non-genuine spare parts to replace or modify the vehicle will affect the performance of the entire vehicle, especially its safety and durability. Vehicle damage and performance issues caused thereby will not be covered by the warranty. In addition, vehicle modifications may also violate national laws and regulations and local government regulations.

Thank you again for choosing BYD. Your valuable comments and suggestions are welcome. To enjoy better services, please provide your accurate contact information. If there is any change to the information, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in a timely manner to update the information in the system. You are also advised to pay attention to the relevant national laws and regulations and local policies, and register the vehicle as soon as possible; otherwise vehicle registration may fail.

The descriptions marked with the asterisk (*) in this manual are specific to only some model configurations, and applicable only when the vehicle has these configurations. If there is any difference with the vehicle you purchased, the configuration of the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Pay attention to the "WARNING", "CAUTION" and "REMINDER" symbols in this manual, and follow the instructions carefully to avoid injury or damage. These symbols are defined as follows:

WARNING

Items that must be observed to ensure personal safety.

CAUTION

Items that must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle.

REMINDER

Items that must be observed to facilitate maintenance.

is a safety mark to indicate an operation that should not be performed or an event that should not happen.

This manual is expected to help you use the product correctly, and does not provide any description of the configuration and software version of this product. For details about the product configuration and software version, please refer to the contract (if any) related to this product, or consult the dealer who sold the product to you.

Everyone has the responsibility to protect the environment. Please use this vehicle properly and dispose of any waste and cleaning materials according to the corresponding local laws and regulations.

Copyright © BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

No part of this document may be reproduced, copied, stored, translated, or transmitted electronically or in any other form without prior written consent and authorization of BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd.

All rights reserved

Figure Index

Exterior.....7

Dashboard..... 8

Interior..... 9

Doors..... 10

Safety

Seat Belts.....12

Seat Belt Overview..... 12

Using Seat Belts.....12

Airbags..... 14

Airbag Overview..... 14

Airbag Types..... 16

Airbag Triggering Conditions..... 17

Child Restraint System.....21

Child Restraint System..... 21

Dual-Mode System Working Mode..... 25

Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode.....25

Selecting Working Mode of the Dual-Mode System..... 27

Anti-theft Alarm System.....30

Anti-theft Alarm System.....30

Data Collection and Processing..... 31

Data Collection and Processing.....31

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster..... 36

Instrument Cluster View.....36

Instrument Cluster Indicators.....37

Controller Operation

Doors and Keys.....48

Keys.....48

Locking/Unlocking Doors..... 52

Smart Access and Start System..... 57

Child Protection Lock.....58

Seats.....59

Seat Precautions..... 59

Adjusting Front Seats..... 60

Folding Rear Seats.....61

Head Supports.....62

Steering Wheel..... 63

Steering Wheel Switches.....63

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....65

Wipers..... 66

Wiper Switches..... 66

Replacing Wiper Blades..... 68

Rearview Mirrors..... 69

Interior Rearview Mirrors..... 69

Side Mirrors.....69

Switches..... 70

Light Switches..... 70

Driver's Door Switches..... 73

Window Control Switch on Passenger's Side.....75

Hazard Warning Light Switch.....75

Panoramic Glass Roof*.....75

Interior Light Switches..... 76

Using and Driving

Charging/Discharging..... 80

Charging Instructions.....80

Charging.....84

Discharging Instructions*.....89

Target SOC Setting*.....91

Charging Port Immobilizer System.....92

Driving Range Display*.....94
Batteries..... 94
High-Voltage Battery..... 94
Low-Voltage Battery.....96
Usage Precautions.....97
Break-in Period.....97
Trailer Towing*..... 98
Driving Safety Precautions.....99
Vehicle Use Suggestions..... 99
Fuel..... 100
Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life.....102
Carrying Luggage..... 103
Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning.....104
Wading into Water.....105
Fire Prevention.....106
Starting and Driving.....107
Starting the Vehicle..... 107
Auto Power On/Off*.....109
Driving.....109
Fuel-Efficient Driving.....111
Gear Shift Controls..... 112
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).....113
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH).....116
Driving Precautions.....117
Driver Assistance..... 120
Driver Assistance System..... 120
Driving Assist..... 126
Forward Safety Assist.....136
Side Safety Assist*.....144
Rear Safety Assist*.....153
Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System..... 158
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS).....159
Around View Monitor (AVM)*.....160
Reversing View*.....161
Parking Assist..... 163
Driving Safety Systems.....166

In-Vehicle Devices

Infotainment System..... 172
Infotainment Touchscreen.....172
Navigation Bar.....173
Gestures and Responses..... 173
OTA Update*..... 173
BYD Assistant*..... 174
Bluetooth.....174
File Management.....174
Phone Projection*..... 175
A/C System..... 180
A/C Buttons.....180
A/C Operation Interface..... 181
Function Definition..... 182
Front Center Vent..... 184
BYD App..... 184
About BYD App*..... 184
Account Registration*.....185
Vehicle Condition and Control*.....185
Individual Center and Vehicle Management*.....185
Storage..... 186
Door Bins..... 186
Eyeglass Case*.....186
Glove Box..... 186
Center Console Cubby.....186
Seatback Pockets..... 187
Cup Holders..... 187
Other Devices..... 187

Sun Visor....187
Grab Handles....187
USB Ports....188
12 V Auxiliary Power....188
Wireless Phone Charger*....188

Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions....192
Maintenance Cycle and Items....192
Regular Maintenance....197
Regular Maintenance....197
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention....198
Paint Maintenance Tips....199
Exterior Cleaning....199
Interior Cleaning....201
Self-Maintenance....203
Self-Maintenance....203
Vehicle Storage....205
Hood....206
Engine....206
Cooling System....207
Braking System....208
Windshield Washer....209
A/C System....209
Wiper Blades....210
Tires....210
Fuses....213

When Faults Occur

When Faults Occur....216
Reflective Vest....216
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted....216
If a High Voltage Fault Occurs....216
If the Vehicle Cannot Be Powered On...216
If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving....217
If the Engine Is Overheated....218
If the Vehicle Needs Towing....218
If a Tire Goes Flat....220

Technical Data

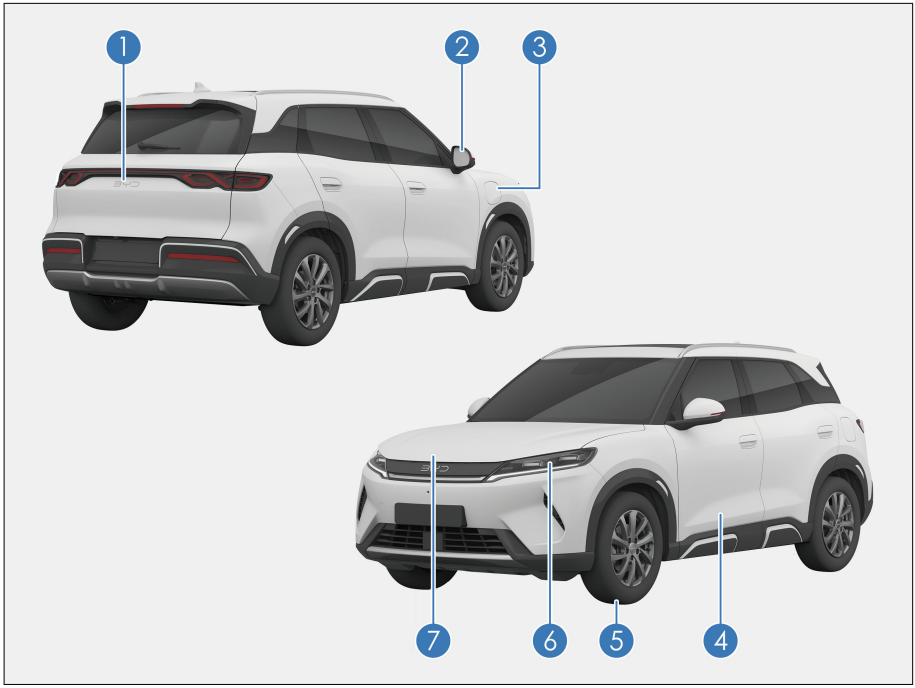
Vehicle Data....226
Specifications....226
Other Information....230
Vehicle Identification....230
Warning Labels....231
Transponder Mounting Position....233
Declarations of Conformity....233
Declarations of Conformity....233

Abbreviations

Abbreviations....239

Figure Index

Exterior



1 Trunk ***P55***

2 Side Mirrors ***P69***

3 Using Mode 2 Charging Cable ***P84***

Using AC Charging Piles* ***P86***

4 Doors ***P52***

5 Tires ***P210***

If a Tire Goes Flat ***P220***

6 Combination Light ***P70***

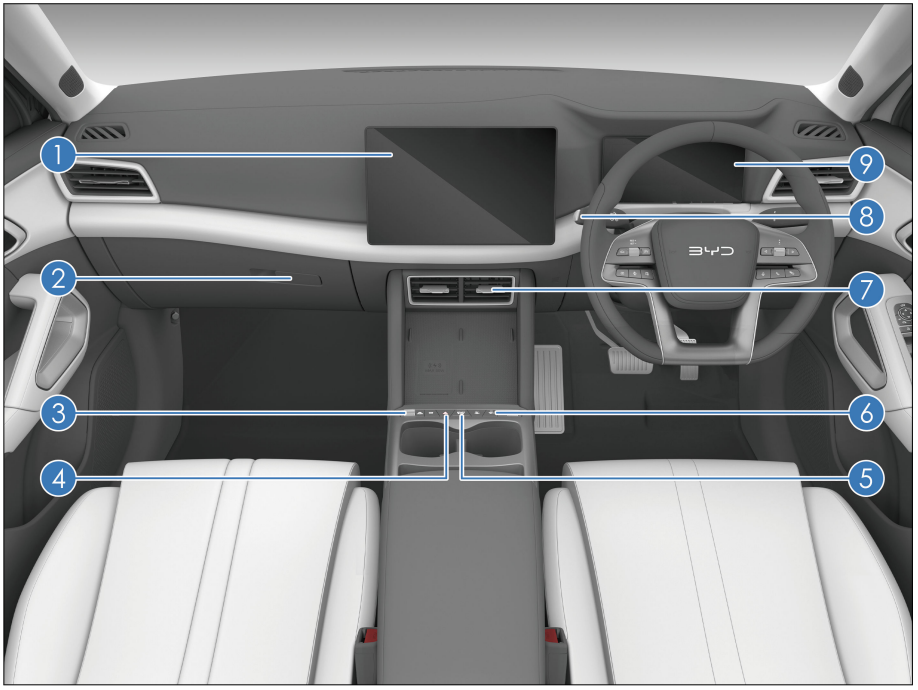
7 Opening the Hood ***P206***

Coolant ***P207***

Brake Fluid ***P208***

Washer ***P209***

Dashboard



1 Infotainment Touchscreen ***P172***

2 Glove Box ***P186***

3 Dual-Mode System Working Mode Button ***P25***

4 Hazard Warning Light Switch ***P75***

5 START/STOP Button ***P107***

6 A/C Buttons ***P180***

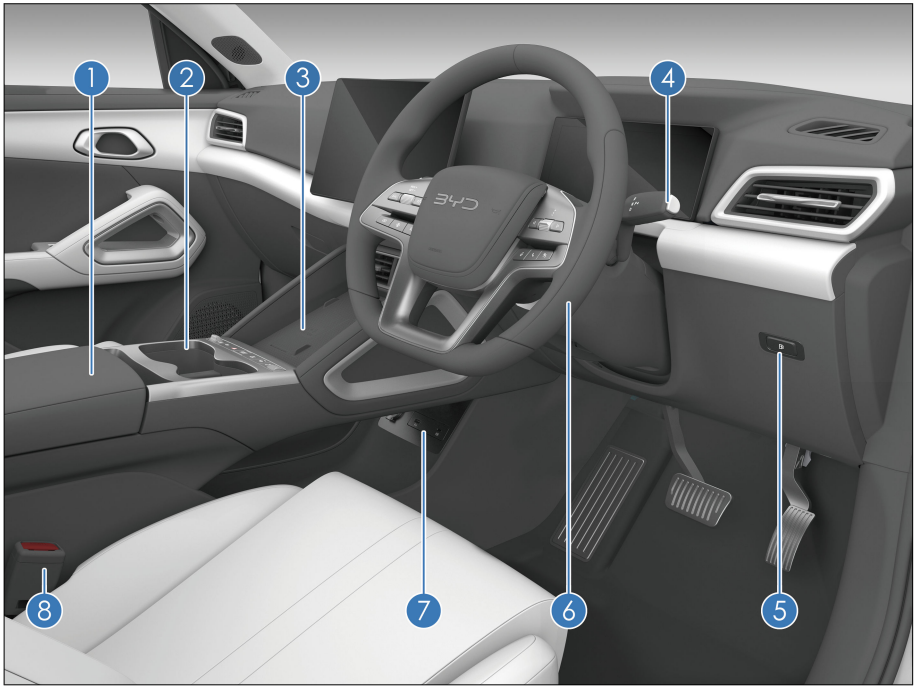
7 Front Vents ***P184***

8 Light Switches ***P70***

Wiper Switches ***P66***

9 Instrument Cluster ***P36***

Interior



1 Center Console Cubby ***P186***

2 Cup Holders ***P187***

3 Wireless Phone Charger* ***P188***

4 Gear Shift Controls ***P112***

5 Fuel Door Release Button ***P100***

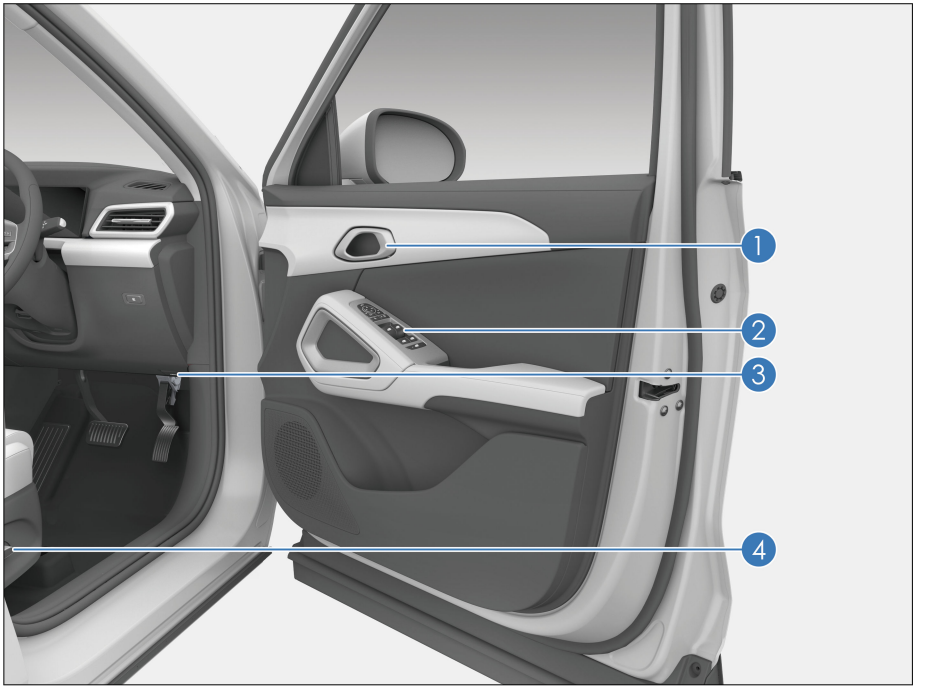
6 Adjusting the Steering Wheel ***P65***

Steering Wheel Switches ***P63***

7 Front-Row USB Ports ***P188***

8 Using Seat Belt ***P12***

Doors



1 Opening with Interior Door Handle ***P52***

2 Power Window Switches ***P73***

Window Lock Button ***P74***

Central Locking ***P75***

Side Mirror Switches ***P69***

3 Opening the Hood ***P206***

4 Adjusting Front Seats with Power ***P60***

01 SAFETY

Seat Belts..... 12
Airbags..... 14
Child Restraint System..... 21
Dual-Mode System Working Mode...25
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 30
Data Collection and Processing..... 31

Seat Belts

Seat Belt Overview

Studies have shown that proper use of seat belts can significantly reduce casualties in emergency braking, sudden steering or collisions. Read the following information carefully and observe it strictly.

CAUTION

- Before driving, make sure all occupants are properly buckled up to prevent personal injury or even death in emergency braking or in a collision.
- The seat belts are designed primarily to fit adults and are not intended for children. Make sure to choose a child restraint system appropriate for your child's age and size (see ***P21***).
- If a seat belt is damaged or malfunctions, immediately contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.

- BYD has highly emphasized that all occupants should always fasten their seat belts while in the vehicle to prevent serious injury or death.
- Children are encouraged to travel on the rear seats and must be buckled up in appropriate child restraint systems. In case of emergency braking or a collision, unprotected children may be seriously injured and their lives may be endangered. Likewise, do not allow a child to be carried on someone's lap. This will render the children not adequately protected.

Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)*

- When the driver turns sharply or brakes suddenly, when there is a collision, or when the occupant leans forward too quickly, the seat belt automatically locks to effectively restrain and protect the occupant.
- When the vehicle travels smoothly, seat belts are pulled out and retracted as the occupants move slowly and smoothly, allowing the occupants to move freely.
- If the seat belt locks due to sudden retraction, pull on the seat belt webbing to create retractable slack in order to pull out the seat belt.

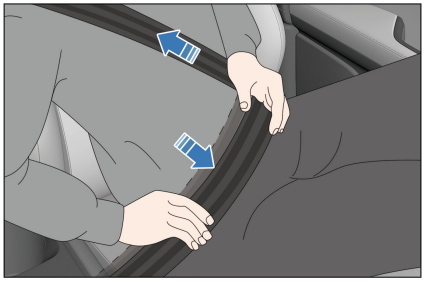
Pretensioner and Force Limiter Function*

When a severe front collision occurs and the triggering conditions of the pretensioner are met, the pretensioner quickly retracts part of the seat belt and locks it to improve the protection of the occupant. The force limiter limits the seat-belt restraint force to the occupant's body to a certain extent so as to avoid injury to the occupant due to an excessive restraint force.

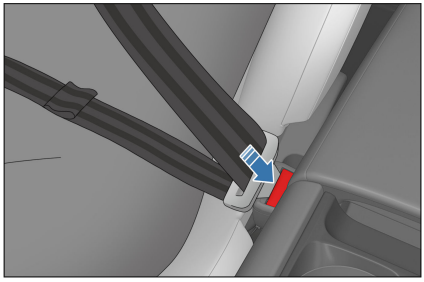
Using Seat Belts

1. Adjust the seat position and seatback angle (see Adjusting Front Seats).
2. Adjust the position of the three-point seat belt.

- Keeping a proper sitting posture, pull the seat belt out so that it is diagonally across the chest. The belt should not go under the arm or across the back of the neck.
- Keep the lap section of the belt as close as possible to the hips.



3. Insert the latch into the buckle until it clicks, and then pull it back to make sure it is firmly locked. Do not fasten the belt with any part of the strap twisted.

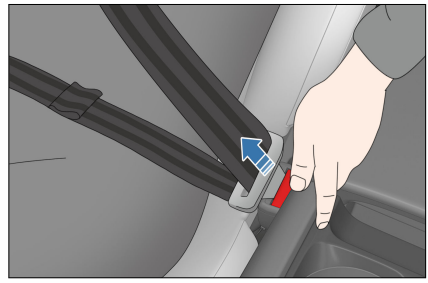


WARNING

- The shoulder belt should cross the center of the shoulder. The seat belt should be far from the neck and not liable to slip from the shoulder; otherwise, it cannot function well in the event of emergency braking or accident and may even cause severe injury.
- The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury due to the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The seat belt should be fitted tight to the body for better protection.

4. Unlock the seat belt.

- Press the red unlock button on the buckle. The latch plate pops out, and the seat belt automatically retracts.
- If the seat belt does not retract smoothly and automatically, pull it out and check whether it is twisted.



WARNING

- One seat belt is for one occupant only. Do not share a seat belt with another occupant, not even with a child.
- Avoid traveling with the seatback leaning too far back. The seat belt protection performs best when the seatback is upright.
- Make sure that no seat belt or its spring bolt/buckle becomes pressed by the door or rear seatback; otherwise, the seat belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belts regularly for cuts, wear, looseness, and other abnormalities. If any problem is found, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.
- Do not remove, disassemble or modify the seat belts without permission.

WARNING

- After an accident, have the seat belts checked at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. If the pretensioner function is activated, the seat belt must be replaced. Use an approved model whenever you replace the seat belt.
- In the event of a serious accident, even if there is no apparent damage, the seat belt should be replaced along with the seat assembly. The airbag system should also be thoroughly inspected.
- Pregnant women need to fasten the seat belts properly and position the lap belt as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury from the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The method of wearing a rear seat belt is the same as that for a front seat belt. For normal functioning of the rear seat belt, please ensure that its latch is inserted into the corresponding buckle during use. The driver should ensure that all occupants are wearing seat belts before driving the vehicle.
- Do not insert foreign objects such as coins and clips into the buckle as they prevent proper connection between the latch and buckle.

Seat Belt Reminders

If any occupant has not buckled up after the vehicle is started, alarms go off and continue until the corresponding seat belt is properly fastened.

- Seat belt reminder main indicator
  - This indicator flashes if any alarm is triggered due to unfastened seat belt.
- Unfastened belt display*
  - The indicator for the seat with unfastened seat belt and alarm lights up.
- Seat belt reminders
  - If the driver or any passenger has not buckled up after the ignition is switched on, the main seat belt reminder indicator and the indicator for the corresponding seat light up. When the vehicle is in motion and the driver or any passenger has not buckled up, the seat belt reminder indicator flashes and an audible alarm is given.
  - When the driver and all the passengers fasten the seat belts, the main indicator and the corresponding seat indicator turn off.

WARNING

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Do not use the corresponding seat until the functions return to normal.
- When driving, make sure all occupants have their seat belts properly fastened to prevent personal injury or even death in emergency braking or in a collision.

Airbags

Airbag Overview

- The airbag system is a part of supplemental restraint system (SRS)

and also a supplement to seats and seat belts. When the vehicle is involved in a serious collision and the airbag system meets its deployment conditions, relevant airbags will rapidly deploy and, along with seat belts, provide additional protection for heads and chests of the occupants to reduce the risk of personal injury or even death.

- Airbags are divided into front and side types according to the type of collision in which they are designed to deploy. The front airbags include a driver airbag and a front passenger airbag, while the side airbags include front seat side airbags and side curtain airbags.
- As an integral part of the vehicle's passive safety protection system, the airbag system does not replace seat belts, and must be used in combination with seat belts to maximize protection.

WARNING

- Occupants must sit in a proper position to maximize the protection provided by seat belts and the airbag system.
- Do not disassemble or assemble airbag components.
- Non-BYD genuine seat covers may worsen the airbag performance or result in injury.
- Do not place anything between the side airbag and the occupant.
- Do not apply excessive force to the side of seats equipped with side airbags.

WARNING

- After a collision, even if the airbag did not deploy, and the pretensioner did not lock the seat belt, to ensure the normal operation of the airbag system, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.

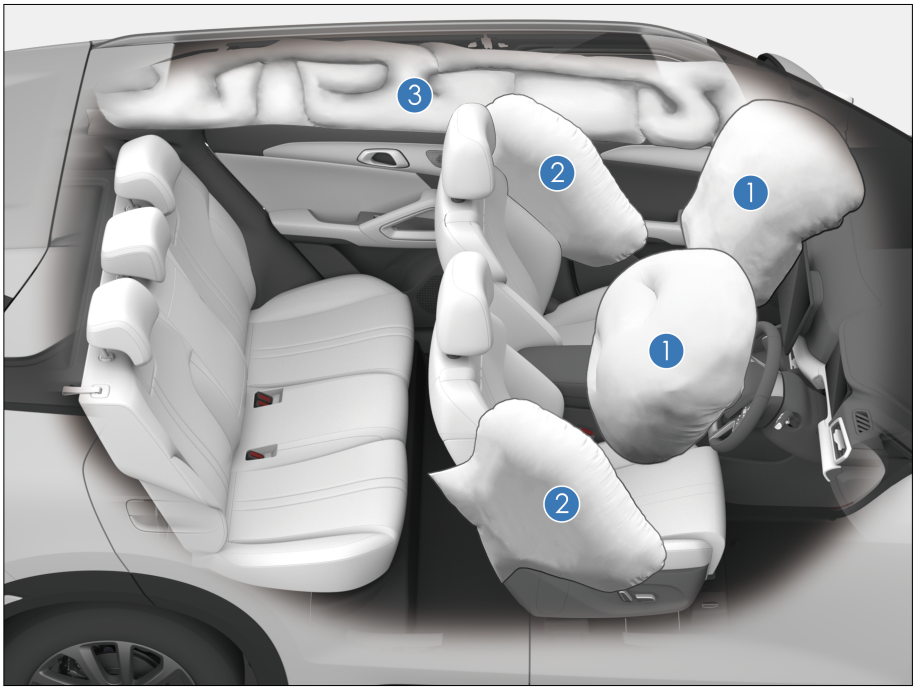
Airbag fault warning light

- The airbag system is monitored by the ECU and has a self-diagnostic function. The system status is indicated by the warning light on the instrument cluster.
- With the ignition on, if the airbag warning light stays on for about five seconds and then disappears, the system is running smoothly.

WARNING

- The airbag warning light stays on in the presence of certain system faults. If this light stays on, head to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible. Otherwise, airbags may not work properly.
- If water enters the vehicle (for example, wet carpets or the vehicle being submerged) or if the vehicle is damaged by water, do not start the vehicle, and disconnect the low-voltage battery. Otherwise, the airbags may deploy, resulting in serious injury or death.

Airbag Types



① Driver and front passenger airbags

② Front seat side airbags

③ Side curtain airbags

Driver and Front Passenger Airbags

The driver airbag is mounted inside the steering wheel and the front passenger airbag is mounted inside the dashboard, both marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to reduce the risk of injury.

Front airbag deployment

- In moderate to severe frontal crashes, a sensor detects a sharp deceleration and sends a signal to the ECU to trigger the front airbags.
- When there is a frontal crash, the seat belt secures the occupant's lower body and torso and the airbag cushions and protects the occupant's head and chest.
- When the severity of the impact does not reach the airbag deployment threshold, seat belts provide enough protection.
- The front airbag deflates immediately after inflation, without affecting the driver's vision and ability to operate the steering wheel or other controls.
- Airbags can inflate rapidly when triggering conditions are satisfied to

further protect drivers and occupants in an accident.

- A loud noise will be heard when the airbag deploys. It will not cause injury, but it may cause tinnitus or temporary deafness.
- The deployment of airbags may release smoke and dust. Although these substances are non-toxic, passengers with respiratory conditions may experience temporary discomfort. If the discomfort is severe, seek medical attention immediately.

WARNING

- No accessories, such as telephone holders, cups, ashtrays, may be installed on airbag covers or within their action range. Otherwise, airbag deployment will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Front Seat Side Airbags

The front seat side airbags are mounted on the outside of front seatbacks, marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to protect the chest of the occupant on the impacted side.

WARNING

- Do not wet the seatbacks, in case the side airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not cover or replace seatback covers on you own. Unsuitable seatback covers may prevent airbag deployment.
- In the event of a side impact, the airbag on the impacted side deploys when the airbag system meets its deployment conditions.
- For optimal side airbag protection, occupants must have their seat belts fastened and sit upright against the seatback.

Side Curtain Airbags

The left and right side curtain airbags are mounted at the junction of the body side trim and the ceiling and marked with "AIRBAG" on the A-pillar, B-pillar and C-pillar trims. When a moderate to severe impact is detected with the ignition on and the triggering conditions are met, the side curtain airbags deploy to protect the heads of all vehicle occupants.

WARNING

- For optimum curtain airbag protection, the occupant must have their seat belt fastened and sit in an upright position.

Airbag Triggering Conditions

- Airbag triggering conditions: In the event of a vehicle collision, whether an airbag will be triggered is decided by factors such as the amount of collision energy, accident type, collision angle, obstacle type, and vehicle speed. The airbag system may be triggered in special collisions.
- The airbag system does not always work in any accident, and generally it will not be triggered in the event of a minor frontal collision, rear collision or rollover. In this case, the driver and passengers are protected by their properly fastened seat belts.

- Determinants of airbag system triggering: The Electronic Control Unit (ECU) captures the deceleration curve and other signals of the vehicle during the crash. If they are lower than the threshold values set in the ECU, the airbag system will not be triggered even if the vehicle is seriously deformed in the accident.
- The ECU of the BYD airbag system has been set up with considerations of common misuse and road conditions. However, due to the increasing changes in causes and forms of vehicle collisions, for your safety, please strictly follow this user manual, use the vehicle correctly, and avoid its misuse. Otherwise, there is no guarantee that the airbags will achieve their expected effect.

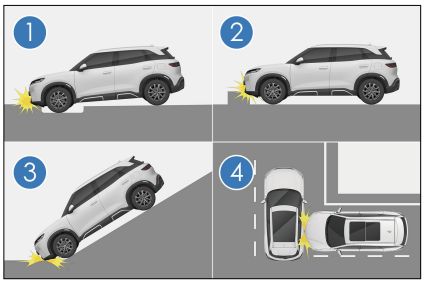
Cases When Airbags May Be Deployed

① The vehicle's nose hits the ground when crossing a deep groove.

② The vehicle hits a bump or curbstone.

③ The vehicle's nose hits the ground when going down a steep slope.

④ One side of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.



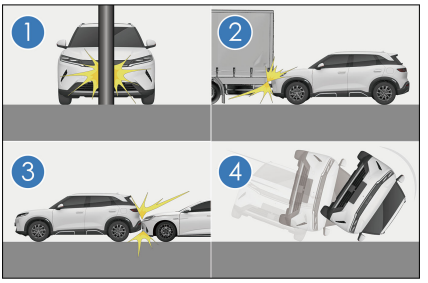
Cases When Airbags May Not Be Deployed

① The vehicle hits a concrete column, tree, or other slim objects.

② The vehicle goes under a truck or another large vehicle.

③ The tail of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.

④ The vehicle rolls over.

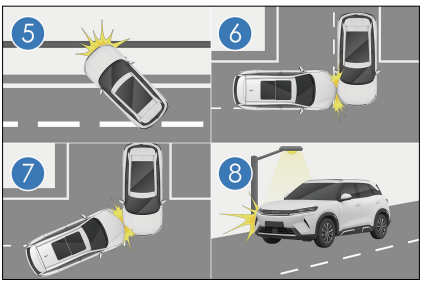


⑤ The vehicle hits a wall or a vehicle at a side other than the front side.

⑥ Parts other than the passenger compartment receive side impact.

⑦ The lateral side of the vehicle is hit diagonally.

⑧ The lateral side of the vehicle hits a columnar object.



WARNING

- Airbags are designed for specific models. Any changes to suspension, tire size, bumpers, chassis and factory-equipped devices may adversely affect the airbag system. Users must not use any parts of the airbag system

WARNING

on other vehicle models; doing so may lead to failure of the airbag system.

- Drivers should maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between their chest and the steering wheel, in order for the system to provide the most effective protection.
- After the airbag system deploys, hot gas resulting from the reaction will be discharged from the airbag vent port. Avoid touching any parts and keep the correct posture of holding the steering wheel, otherwise skin burns may occur.
- Fasten your seat belt and sit properly while the vehicle is in motion. If the seat belt is not fastened, and the occupant is leaning forward or sitting improperly, airbag deployment can increase the risk of injury.
- Do not install, place, attach, or cover any accessories near airbags and their deployment areas, such as the hub cover of the steering wheel, surface of driver airbag cover, the dashboard area where the airbag is located, the windows, pillars, or ceiling. Otherwise, serious or fatal injuries may occur during airbag deployment.
- Clean these airbag surfaces with a dry or damp cloth, without applying too much pressure.
- A child is not to be seated without protection, nor are they to ride sitting on a front passenger's lap, to prevent serious injury or even casualty caused by airbag deployment.

WARNING

- Side airbags and side curtain airbags deploy quickly with high impact forces. Occupants must not lean against the doors of vehicles equipped with these airbags while these vehicles are in motion, because doing so may result in serious injuries or even death.
- Do not place any other accessories or items within the action range of side curtain airbags, including the windshield, side door glass, A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and auxiliary handles. When the side curtain airbag deploys, the accessories or items will be thrown by the impact force from the side air curtain airbag, or the side curtain airbag may not deploy normally, resulting in serious injury or even death.
- When transferring vehicle ownership, make sure to pass on all of the vehicle's documents and keep the new ownership informed of airbag conditions.
- Do not modify or replace seats or trims of the seats with side airbags. These changes may prevent normal deployment of side airbags, and thereby cause airbag system failure or unintended deployment of side airbags, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Do not disassemble or repair the A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim or C-pillar trim, which contain side curtain airbags. These changes can cause failure of the airbag system or accidental deployment of curtain airbags, which may

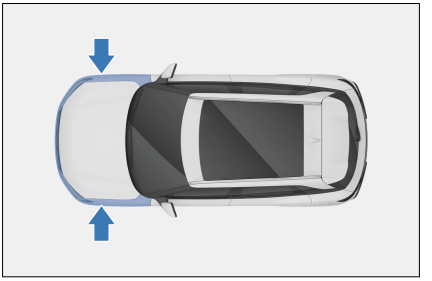
WARNING

cause serious injury or even death.

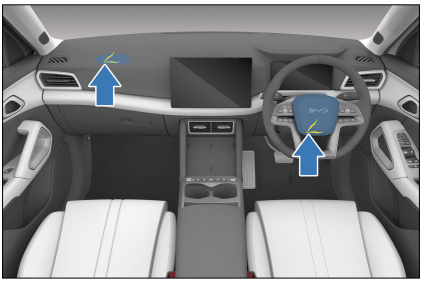
- Do not change any component of the airbag system, including any corresponding label. It is recommended that any operation done to the airbags be performed by a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Airbags can only provide one-time accident protection. Once the airbag is triggered or damaged, the airbag system must be replaced.
- Follow safety regulations and procedures related to the scrapping of parts of the vehicle or its airbag system.
- The airbag system has strong anti-interference and anti-disturbance resistance to electromagnetic fields around it. However, to avoid accidents, do not use the vehicle in an electromagnetic environment that violates national regulations.
- The airbag system of this vehicle is designed with full consideration of common misuses and road conditions. However, in order to avoid accidents, do not have the bottom of the vehicle impacted or drive roughly in harsh road conditions.
- This vehicle's airbag system has been fully verified to match the vehicle's original wiring harness system. Any wiring harness modification or alteration may cause the airbags to deploy mistakenly under normal conditions or fail to deploy in the event of a collision.

It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately if any of the following situations occurs.

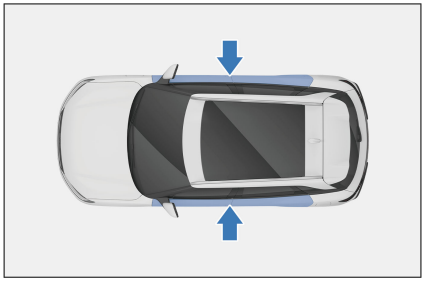
- Any airbag has deployed.
- Instrument cluster airbag warning light lights up abnormally.
- There is a collision with the front of the vehicle (highlighted area shown), but the airbags do not deploy.



- The airbag cover (highlighted area shown) has been scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.



- An impact to a vehicle door in an accident is not adequate to cause the airbag to deploy (the shaded portion as shown).



- Airbags need to be removed, disassembled, installed or repaired.
- The surface of the seat with a side airbag is scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Decorative (liner) parts at A-pillar with built-in curtain airbags, roof beam and C-pillar are scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.

Child Restraint System

Child Restraint System

Child restraint systems provide effective protection to children in an accident. For child safety, carefully read the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and this manual before installing a child restraint.

WARNING

- Never carry a child on your lap while travelling.
- Appropriate child restraint systems must be used for children.
- Please follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system and in this manual to make sure the child restraint is properly installed in the vehicle.
- After the child restraint is dismounted from the seat, store it safely in your vehicle.
- Failure to follow the instruction provided with the child restraint and in this manual may cause injuries and even death to your child in an accident.
- Children are not allowed to stand in the car or kneel on the seat when the car is moving to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or collision.

Children must be secured in a suitable child restraint in a comfortable and safe way when traveling in the vehicle. Make sure that the child restraint is positioned, mounted, and used correctly.

Important considerations for selecting a child restraint

- The type and size is suitable for the child.
- The type and size is suitable for the seating position.
- The child restraint system must meet the local standard.

WARNING

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat.

Child Restraint System Anchorages

The vehicle is equipped with ISOFIX attachment points on the rear seats for child restraint systems. Secure the top tether when installing the child restraint system.

- A special anchorage is provided on the rear outboard seat (the label showing the anchorage is attached to the seat).



REMINDER

- The anchorages are located in the gap between the seat cushion and the seatback.
- Do not pry open the protective cover of the child restraint anchorage outward to avoid damage.
- After removing the child restraint, press the protective cover to reset the cover.

- The rear seats are equipped with anchor supports on the back.



Installing Child Restraint Systems

1. Check the position of the anchorage and install the child restraint on the seat.



WARNING

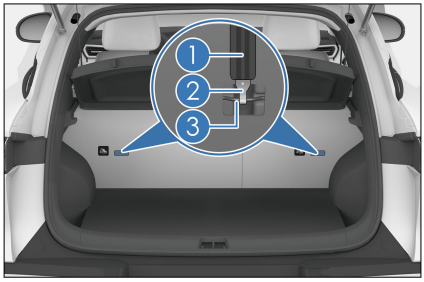
- When using the lower anchoring device, make sure that no foreign objects are around the anchoring point and that the seat belt is not stuck behind the child restraint; make sure that the child restraint is securely fixed. Otherwise, emergency braking or an accident may result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harness, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

2. Fasten the snap hook of the top tether strap to the anchor support, and tighten the top tether to ensure the strap is secure.

   ① Top tether

   ② Snap hook

   ③ Anchor support



3. Adjust the head support to a proper position.

CAUTION

- Push/Pull the child restraint in different directions to ensure it is securely installed.
- If the driver seat obstructs the correct installation of the CRS, install it on the rear seat behind the front passenger side.

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the seat protected by a front airbag (in the active state), otherwise in the event of an accident, the force of rapid deployment of the front passenger airbag will result in death or serious injury to the child.



Always follow the instructions below when using a child restraint on a rear seat:

- When the child restraint system is installed on any rear seats, front seats can be adjusted forward to ensure that the child is not in contact with the front seats. Meanwhile, the front seatback angle can also be adjusted to get more space.
- The head support can be adjusted or even removed to ensure that the vehicle seatback can stably support the child restraint system.
- When a child restraint is not equipped with the backrest, never remove the head support of the vehicle and be sure to adjust it to the locking position.
- For more installation instructions, please read the instructions provided with your child restraint system.

WARNING

- Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the rear middle seat.
- Do not allow children to play with seat belts, otherwise, this could result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.

Recommended seating positions for installing child restraint systems

Weight Group	Seat (or Other Positions)		
	Front passenger seat	Rear outboard seat	Rear middle seat
Portable Bed	X	X	X
Group 0 (up to 10 kg)	X	U	X
Group 0+ (up to 13 kg)	X	U	X
Group 1 (9–18 kg)	X	U/UF	X
Group 2 (15–25 kg)	X	UF	X
Group 3 (22–36 kg)	X	UF	X

Note: Table definitions:

U: seat suitable for installing a universal child restraint certified for this weight group

UF: seat suitable for installing a front-facing universal child restraint certified for this weight group

X: seat position not suitable for installing a child restraint for this weight group.

Seat belt, ISOFIX or i-Size CRS installing options in the vehicle

Type	Seating Position				
	Front left	Front right	Rear left	Rear middle	Rear right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for	No	No	No	No	No

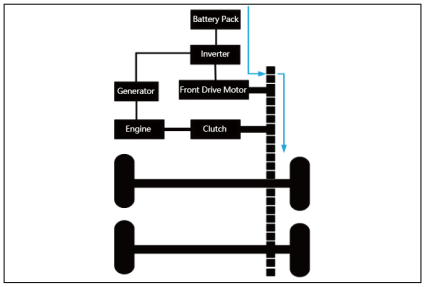
Type	Seating Position				
	Front left	Front right	Rear left	Rear middle	Rear right
lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)					
Largest suitable rearward-facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3
Largest suitable forward-facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	No	F2X/F2/F3	No	F2X/F2/F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	No	No	No	No

Dual-Mode System Working Mode

Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode

EV—Pure Electric Mode

- In EV mode, the high-voltage battery supplies power to the motor to drive the vehicle under various driving conditions, such as starting, reversing, idling, accelerating, and cruising.

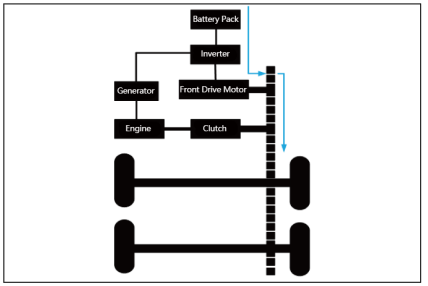


REMINDER

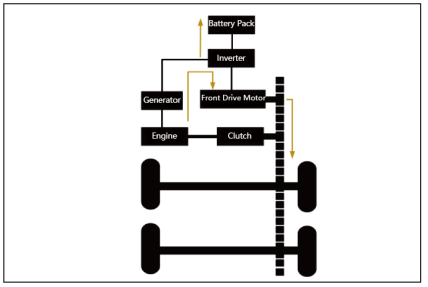
- The vehicle may automatically switch to HEV mode under certain conditions, such as rapid acceleration, high vehicle speed, climbing steep grades, or extremely high or low temperatures, as well as low SOC levels. When EV mode conditions are met, you may switch back to EV mode manually if needed. It is suggested to use HEV mode when high-voltage battery temperature is too high or too low.

HEV—Dual-Mode

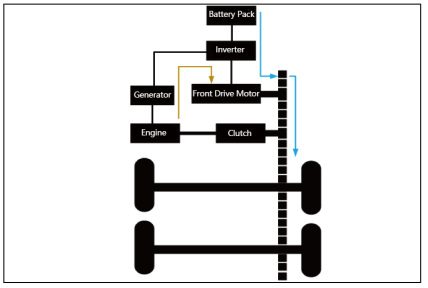
- In HEV mode, when the SOC is high or power demand is low, the engine remains off and the vehicle operates in EV mode.



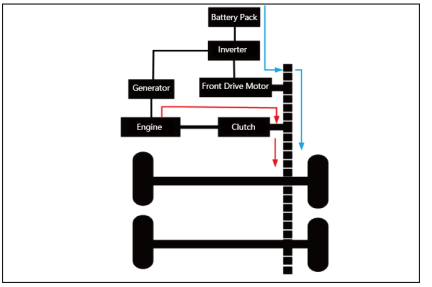
- In HEV mode, when the SOC is low or high power is required, the engine starts and operates in series mode to ensure sufficient power performance.
  - In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity to charge the battery and power the motor.



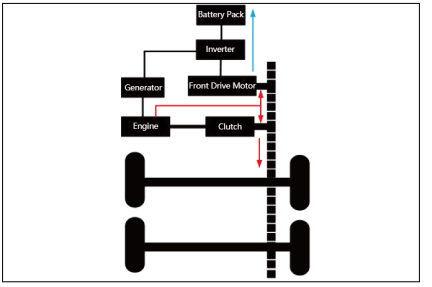
  - In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity while the battery discharges to power the drive motor.



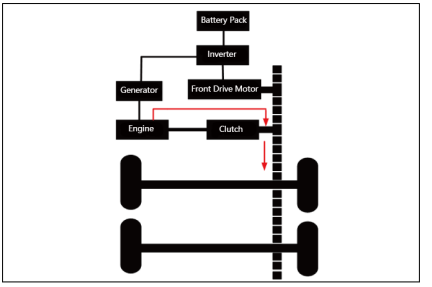
- In HEV mode, when the vehicle is traveling at medium or high speeds, the engine may operate in parallel under certain conditions to improve fuel economy:
  - In HEV mode, the engine and motor drive together.



  - In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle while the motor generates electricity for energy recovery.



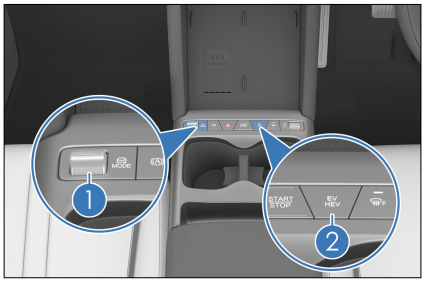
  - In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle while the motor is inactive.



Selecting Working Mode of the Dual-Mode System

① "MODE" button

② "EV/HEV" mode button



EV-ECO mode:

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the ECO indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in ECO mode to minimize power consumption.

EV-NORMAL mode:

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the NORMAL indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in NORMAL mode to balance comfort and power consumption.

EV-SPORT mode:

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the SPORT indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in SPORT mode to ensure better dynamic performance.

HEV-ECO mode:

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the ECO indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in ECO mode to provide the best fuel economy.

HEV-NORMAL mode:

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the NORMAL indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in NORMAL mode to balance comfort and fuel consumption.

HEV-SPORT mode:

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the SPORT indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in SPORT mode to provide the best dynamic performance.

Snow mode

- Toggle the "MODE" switch repeatedly to cycle through ECO, NORMAL, SPORT, and snow modes. When in snow mode, toggle the switch again to exit the mode.
- Snow mode optimizes the vehicle's traction, driving performance, and maneuverability on slippery roads, such as roads covered with grass, snow, ice, or gravel.

- For your safety, it is recommended to driver slower and press the accelerator pedal gently on slippery roads, even in snow mode.

WARNING

- Because ESC activation limits the engine torque, momentarily deactivating ESC may help if the vehicle is stuck in deep snow. The ESC system must be restarted after conditions are back to normal, see ***P166***.

Precautions for Dual-Mode System Working Mode

The vehicle operates using both gasoline and electric power. Pay special attention to the following points:

- In low temperature environment, the performance of high-voltage battery will decline. To prevent the high-voltage battery damaged, the following protection mechanisms are set:
  - When the temperature is low, the vehicle limits the charging and discharging power and SOC level.
  - It is recommended to operate the vehicle in environments above -20°C. In case of the above special environment, it is recommended to use the engine to drive the vehicle.
- The optimal operating temperature for battery is 25 °C. When the temperature is too high or too low, output power is limited and the pure electric driving range may be reduced.

Pay attention to high-voltage and high-temperature components

- High-voltage components, including the high-voltage battery, are connected by orange cables.

WARNING

- Do not touch orange cables or high-voltage battery terminals. Electric shock may cause serious injury or even death.
- Read all warning labels carefully.

- The motor, coolant radiator, and some other components may reach high temperatures during driving and therefore are labeled accordingly. Read all warning labels carefully and follow the instructions.

WARNING

- Do not remove or disassemble any high-voltage parts, otherwise serious or even life-threatening injuries may be caused.
- In case of collision, water immersion, or other situations that may cause damage to the high-voltage system, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to avoid electric shock.
- If an electric leakage warning appears, or if a BYD authorized dealer has diagnosed electric leakage, do not continue using the vehicle.
- Do not touch parts with high voltage, so as to avoid electric shock caused by improper operation which causes serious injuries or even death.

- For the vehicle is driven by gasoline engine and electric motor, engine sound may be heard from the engine compartment.
- When the vehicle powers up or down, the sound of the high voltage component (the sound of contactor

engagement or disengagement) may be heard under the auxiliary dashboard, which is not a fault.

- If the "OK" indicator lights up, the vehicle can be driven, even if the gasoline engine has not been started (driven by the motor only).
- Be sure to press the "P" button when parking. When the vehicle is in Park or Neutral and the SOC is low, the engine may start to charge the high-voltage battery. Do not hold the shift lever in N, R, or D for too long, as it may trigger a false gear-stuck warning. Always release the lever after shifting. When leaving the vehicle, press the "P" button and make sure EPB is engaged, take away the key and lock all doors.
- If the low-voltage battery fails and is completely exhausted, even a 12 V external power supply cannot perform a jump start, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- Always turn off the powertrain when leaving the vehicle.
- Be sure to press the "P" button when leaving the vehicle, because when the OK indicator lights up but the engine stops, the vehicle can move slowly in idle (because the motor drives it).
- When the "OK" indicator light is on, the vehicle may travel at a low speed when the vehicle is in Reverse or Drive without depressing the brake pedal. Pay attention to avoid accidents.

- Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle repair or maintenance.
- If the vehicle cannot be repaired due to accident or other reasons, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- For handling the sealed hybrid low-voltage battery, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- In the event of an accident, perform the following operations to reduce the risk of high-voltage electric leakage.
  - Move the vehicle to a safe place.
  - Depress the brake pedal, press the "P" button, and engage EPB.
  - Stop the dual-mode system.
- If the vehicle is severely damaged, there may be a risk of electric shock. To avoid electric shock, do not touch any high-voltage components (such as battery assembly) or orange cables. Avoid touching exposed wires inside or outside the vehicle.
- If liquid leaks into components, do not touch as it may contain electrolyte from the low-voltage battery. If fluids contact skin or eyes, flush with plenty of water (preferably boric acid solution) and seek immediate medical attention.
- If the vehicle catches fire, use a electric fire extinguisher. Using only a small amount of water can be dangerous, so use plenty of water (such as a fire hydrant) or wait for the fire brigade.
- For towing, use four-wheel off-ground towing. If wheels touch the ground, the motor may generate electricity, leading to electric leakage.

Anti-theft Alarm System

Anti-theft Alarm System

Arming the system

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. All occupants get off the vehicle.
3. Lock all doors. The anti-theft alarm system will arm automatically after eight seconds.

Triggering the alarm

- The system, when armed, will raise an alarm* with flashing turn signals in any of the following situations:
  - Any door, trunk, or hood is opened without using the keyless access function of the smart key.
  - Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.

Disarming the system

- Anti-theft alarm can be stopped by:
  - Unlocking the door or trunk with a valid smart key/NFC key/App.
  - Using the microswitch to unlock the door by carrying a valid smart key.
  - Starting the vehicle remotely with a valid smart key.
  - Pressing the START/STOP button inside the vehicle while carrying a valid smart key.

WARNING

- Do not repair, replace or modify the components of the anti-theft system; such modifications may cause the system to malfunction or affect the terms of the insurance.
- If a fault occurs, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

PIN to Drive*

- To set a PIN to drive, shift into Park, then go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** and follow the on-screen instructions.
- When enabled, this feature requires entering the correct PIN on the infotainment touchscreen before vehicle gear can be shifted. If the vehicle anti-theft alarm system is armed because the PIN attempt limit is reached, follow on-screen instructions to disarm the system.
- When you forget the PIN, tap **Forget password** and follow the instructions to change it.
- To disable the PIN, tap the settings then input the PIN.

CAUTION

- Register the BYD App and link the vehicle to BYD App's account before using this feature.
- Be sure to shift into Park before setting the PIN.
- PIN to drive works for unlocking with the smart key or the microswitch (smart key nearby), but not for such operations using the NFC key card* or from the BYD App.
- If you cannot input the PIN after powering on the vehicle

CAUTION

due to infotainment touchscreen malfunction or black screen, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Data Collection and Processing

Data Collection and Processing

- This section provides you with some important information on how personal data is collected and processed when you use a BYD vehicle.
- For a more detailed overview on data processing, data protection and data subject rights, please refer to the current version of the privacy policy available in the infotainment system (→ **System** → **General**).
- This vehicle is equipped with an event data recording (EDR) system. EDR mainly records data in the event of a crash or near-crash (for example, airbag deployment or hitting on a roadside obstacle) to help comprehend the vehicle system operation, such as:
  - Vehicle velocity
  - Tire pressure condition
  - Adaptive cruise control (ACC) system status
  - Whether the seat belt is fastened
- The vehicle records EDR data only when there is a crash or when a near-crash event reaches a certain extent. The EDR does not record any data during the normal driving of the vehicle.
  - The data recorded by the EDR system provides an understanding of the state of the vehicle's safety-related systems when an accident occurs, so that relevant parties can analyze the accident.
  - The EDR data needs to be accessed and read by special equipment. BYD will not disclose your personal data to third parties unless this is legally permissible or you have consented to it. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third-party agencies with professional equipment (such as government agencies) can also read the EDR data if they have access to the vehicle EDR and equipment (for example, they can read the data of SRS control unit to clarify the accident).

Vehicle Data Processing

- Data is collected when the vehicle is used, such as data collected or transmitted by vehicle sensors or control units, which is necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle.
- In some cases, the data is used to support driving (driver assistance systems) or to enable a specific comfort or infotainment function.
- Personal data that is collected and processed mainly include in-vehicle data, remote-services-related data, and other data, as further specified below.

In-vehicle data

Operation data

- When the vehicle is used, various vehicle status data (e.g., speed, battery level, and braking system) or environment (e.g., distance sensors,

rain sensor, and temperature) data is collected and processed.

- This data is not usually stored, but there are control units, sensors or other components installed in the vehicle that record such data, for example, to record maintenance requirements, error messages, or other information.
- The in-vehicle data will only be stored in the equipment in the vehicle but can be read out via the legally required OBD ("On Board Diagnostics") interface, for example, by BYD authorized dealer or service provider or other third parties.
- In case this access takes place during vehicle maintenance, the information can also be transmitted to BYD engineers for quality assurance, product defect reports, or customer claim verification.

Remote-services-related data

Remote monitoring services

- The vehicle has remote monitoring services. These include remote diagnosis and over-the-air (OTA) updates and upgrades for security and safety purposes (subject to owner's approval).
- These monitoring services serve the following purposes: service provision (remote support/diagnostics), product development, and security/public safety.
- Depending on the country and setup, various vehicle information can be transmitted to BYD's data center in corresponding market for the above purposes, including vehicle location information, vehicle status, such as energy consumption, vehicle speed, gear position, power mode, ESC status, steering system status, battery status, powertrain status, and overall vehicle performance status.

Other

Infotainment system

- Depending on vehicle configuration, data can be added to the infotainment system by the users themselves, such as media data for playing video on the infotainment system, address data for use in the navigation system, or data for use in online services.
- Depending on vehicle configuration, individual settings in and on the vehicle can also be entered.
- Data stored in the vehicle can be deleted at any time.
- BYD has no control over data transferred to third parties (from the use of third party content, in particular as part of online services).

Integration of mobile devices

- Depending on vehicle configurations, mobile devices can be connected and controlled through the vehicle's infotainment system.
- It may be necessary that the device's screen or audio is displayed/played through the infotainment system or transmitted to it.
- Additional data like positioning or vehicle information can be transmitted through applications for use in certain navigation systems, communication, or other third-party services.
- The specific type of data processing depends on the respective function and is controlled by the user or third parties such as the provider of the devices or corresponding services.

Internet access and connected services

- Depending on vehicle configurations, the Internet can be accessed for certain

functions or BYD services through the vehicle's infotainment system network devices.

- BYD is not liable for any such services provided by any other party.
- In such cases, please obtain information about the use of data from the provider of the respective online service.

Camera image recording/surrounding area monitoring

- Your vehicle is equipped with a number of cameras/sensors.
- The reason for this is that some vehicle functionalities require the vehicle's path to be detected and assessed which is done by cameras that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings (e.g., obstacles).
- The images are transmitted to the respective control module for further analytics required to operate the systems.
- Some images are just processed on a volatile basis (RAM), others may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment.
- The vehicle may be equipped with an outward-facing camera (OFC) that can be used to take footage of the surrounding (for example, dashcam).
- The vehicle may also be equipped with an inward-facing camera (IFC), which can be used to take footage inside the vehicle.
- Both OFC and IFC footage is stored.
- You are responsible to check the laws of your residence before turning on your OFC or IFC (for instance, in some countries consent is required for the use of IFC, and in others OFC is strictly restricted to dashcam purposes).
- For more camera details, see section "Panoramic View System" in this manual.

Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties and Offline Mode

- In case of a permanent vehicle transfer, i.e., second hand vehicle, or vehicle transfer by a third party for permanent use, it must be noted that any personalization/user settings made via the infotainment system (e.g. address list, navigation system, etc.) may be accessed by the new owner.

REMINDER

- Before scrapping the vehicle or transferring vehicle ownership, it is recommended to restore the factory settings to protect your personal privacy.

- You can also restrict your vehicle's communication with the BYD data server and the processing of vehicle-related and personal data by setting the vehicle to offline mode.
- On the infotainment touchscreen, tap to turn Wi-Fi off.
- This can also be done by tapping → **System** → **Link**.

Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities

- BYD discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it.
- However, subject to applicable laws, government agencies may be authorized to read out data from vehicles (e.g. data can be read from

the airbag control unit to clarify an accident).

- If required by law, BYD may also be obliged to disclose data upon request to governmental authorities in your country, e.g. in the investigation of a criminal offence.

Your Data Protection Rights

- BYD has staunch respect for its customer's privacy, and strictly complies with all data protection laws, in particular the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) and applicable local laws.
- According to these laws, owners have specific rights when their personal data is processed:
  - Data subjects have the right of information and access, to rectification, erasure of personal data ("right to be forgotten") and the right to object to the processing of personal data or to restrict it (or to withdraw consent given earlier, as well as the right to data portability).
- These rights may be limited in some cases. For example, if we can show that we have a legal obligation to process your data, or if providing the information to you would disclose personal data about another person, or if we are legally prevented from disclosing that information.
- In some cases, this may mean that we can retain the data even if you withdraw your consent.

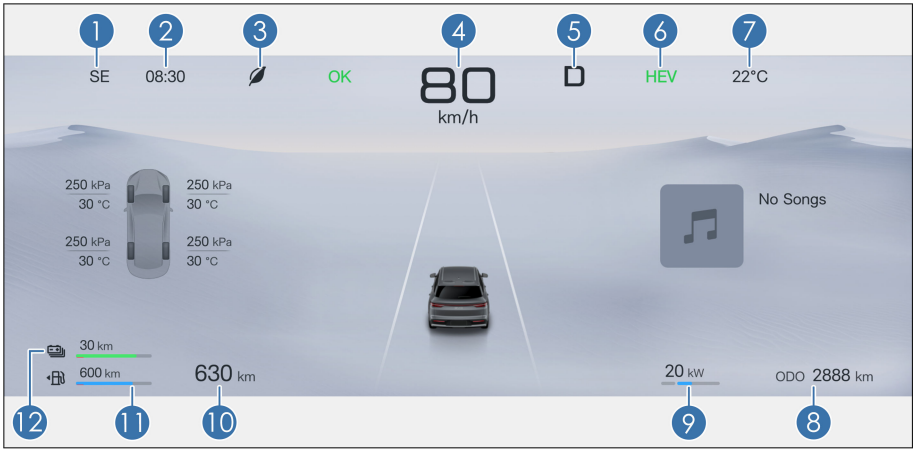
02 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Instrument Cluster.....36

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster View

LCD Instrument Cluster



1	Direction	7	Outside temperature
2	Time	8	Total mileage
3	Driving mode	9	Power meter
4	Speedometer	10	Driving range
5	Gear status	11	Fuel gauge
6	Power mode	12	State of charge (SOC)

CAUTION

- When the instrument cluster experiences occasional communication delays, it may automatically switch to simple mode for safe driving. In this mode, essential driving information remains displayed and vehicle operation is not affected. The system returns to normal mode automatically once communication recovers. If it does not, try the following steps to switch back to normal mode:

  1. Press and hold the scroll button on auxiliary dashboard for three seconds to restart the instrument cluster information display system.
  2. While safety is ensured, restart the vehicle.

CAUTION

- If the instrument cluster remains in simple mode after those actions have been taken, promptly contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.
- The image of the instrument cluster view is for reference

CAUTION

only and is subject to actual configuration.

Instrument Cluster Indicators

Indicators/Warning Lights

Indicator	Name	Indicator	Name
	Turn signal indicator		Position light indicator
	Discharge indicator		OK indicator
	GPF regeneration indicator*		Low beam indicator
	EV indicator		HEV indicator
	AVH indicator		HDC indicator
	AVH standby indicator		ACC working indicator*
	ICC active indicator*		Forced EV indicator
	AFL indicator*		High beam indicator
	Lane support system indicator*		ICC fault warning light*
	AVAS OFF indicator		Driving power limit indicator

Indicator	Name	Indicator	Name
	GPF regeneration fault warning light*		Rear fog light indicator*
	Low tire pressure warning light		Oil life monitoring indicator
	Smart key warning light		Main alarm indicator
	ESC OFF warning light		ESC fault warning light
	Headlight fault warning light		Engine fault warning light
	ABS fault warning light		High-voltage battery low SOC warning light
	Lane support system fault warning light*		LDA off indicator*
	ELKA fault warning light*		ELKA off indicator*
	TSR off indicator*		TSR fault warning light*
	Low fuel warning light		EPB indicator
	AEB warning light*		Motor overheating warning light
	Speed limit indicator*		Powertrain fault warning light
	Parking brake system fault warning light		Seat belt indicator

Indicator	Name	Indicator	Name
	Airbag fault warning light		Steering system fault warning light
	Coolant overheating warning light		Low oil pressure warning light
	High-voltage battery charging connection indicator		Low-voltage power system fault warning light
	High-voltage battery overheating warning light		High-voltage battery fault warning light

Indicators/Warning Lights Description

 Emission system fault warning light

- With the vehicle powered ON, this fault indicator is on for self-check. If on at any other time, it indicates that a certain control system of the vehicle may be faulty. Continuous operation in this state may cause serious damage to the vehicle.
- If this warning light lights up when the vehicle is not in self-check, drive the vehicle to the roadside safely, power the vehicle off, and power it on again. Check this warning light when starting the engine. If the warning light is still on, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible. Before the fault is identified at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider, drive carefully and avoid fully pressing the accelerator pedal or driving with high speeds.
- If the fault warning light lights up frequently, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection, even if it goes out after the above steps are followed.

CAUTION

- Continuous driving after the emission system fault warning light turns on may damage the emission control system and the engine.

 Low fuel warning light

- This indicator is on the fuel gauge. If on, it indicates little fuel in the fuel tank and reminds the driver to refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. When the fuel tank shakes on a slope or curve, the low fuel warning light may be on earlier than usual.

 Smart key warning light

- If the key is not in the vehicle when the START/STOP button is pressed, the warning light will light up for a few seconds, a beep will be heard, and a "Key not detected" message will be displayed.

- If you carry the electronic smart key and press the START/STOP button, this warning light will not light up and the vehicle can be powered on.
- This warning light will disappear if the key is taken into the vehicle within a few seconds after the light turns on.
- If the warning light flashes after you press the START/STOP button, it indicates low battery of the key.



ABS fault warning light

- This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on. If the anti-lock braking system (ABS) is working properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. Thereafter, if the system fails, the light lights up again until the fault is cleared.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking brake system fault warning light off), the braking system continues to operate whereas ABS does not.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking brake system fault warning light off), since ABS does not operate, the wheels will be locked in case of emergency braking or braking on a slippery road.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light does not come on or is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If both warning lights for ABS and the parking brake system turn on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Braking at this time can render the vehicle unstable, given the malfunction of the ABS system.

- The ABS has a self-check function. If a malfunction occurs, the ABS fault warning light turns on, indicating an ABS failure. In this case, the brake system will still provide normal braking capability as in a conventional vehicle without ABS. However, under strong braking, the front or rear wheels may lock up, which could result in loss of steering control or skidding. If this occurs, especially in rainy or snowy conditions, avoid pressing the brake pedal forcefully to prevent loss of vehicle control. It is recommended to contact an authorized BYD service center for inspection as soon as possible.
- If the ABS warning light and the parking system warning light illuminate simultaneously, and the electronic parking brake is fully released, it indicates that the brake force distribution system between the front and rear wheels has also failed.
- If the brake pedal feels abnormal, take measures immediately. The braking system is dual-circuited, so partial failure cannot prevent the other two wheels from braking. In such a situation, you need to press the brake pedal further to slow the vehicle, and braking distance is longer. Decelerate

the vehicle and safely move it to the roadside. A longer braking distance can present serious driving hazards, so the vehicle must be towed away for immediate repair.

- If you have to drive a short distance under such conditions, proceed at low speed with extreme caution.

 Tire pressure fault warning light

- This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on. It turns off in a few seconds if the tire pressure monitoring system is working properly. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light comes on or flashes, the message "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster, and the tire pressure is displayed as "---", it indicates that the tire pressure system is faulty.
- When the tire pressure value displays "No Signal", it indicates that the tire pressure signal at the location of the vehicle may be disturbed or the tire pressure monitoring module is damaged.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on and one or more values on the tire pressure screen turn yellow, it indicates that the corresponding tire is underinflated. When the temperature value of one or more tires turns yellow, it indicates that the tire temperature is too high.
- In the event of any of the situations above, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.

 ESC fault warning light

- This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on. If ESC functions properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again until the system fault is fixed.
- If the ESC warning light flashes temporarily while the vehicle is in motion, it indicates the ESC system is working.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking brake system fault warning light off), it indicates that ESC fails but the ABS and the braking system continue to operate normally.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking brake system fault warning light off), the ESC system does not work. This means the vehicle is extremely unstable at sharp turns or when the driver steers away from obstacles ahead.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light remains off (self-check not performed within 5 seconds) after the vehicle is powered on.
  - This warning light is steady on while driving.

REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the ESC warning light remains on while the warning lights for the ABS and the parking brake

REMINDER

system are on, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Braking at this time can render the vehicle unstable, given the malfunction of the ABS system.



ESC OFF warning light

- With the ignition on, this warning light turns on for a few seconds and then goes off.
- When the "ESC OFF" switch is turned on, the light should remain steady on and the ESC system will not operate. When the ESC OFF switch is pressed again, this warning light should turn off and the ESC system returns to normal.

REMINDER

- If the ESC OFF warning light is on, stay alert and maintain a slow driving speed in sharp turns and when avoiding obstacles. Braking at this time can render the vehicle unstable, given the malfunction of ESC system.



Driving power limit warning light

- When the motor power is limited, this warning light will light up, and it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.



Seat belt reminder indicator

- This warning light reminds the driver and the passenger to fasten their seat belts. With the ignition on, if either the driver or the passenger doesn't fasten a seat belt, the corresponding seat belt indicator* will light up. It remains on until the seat belt is fastened.



Airbag fault warning light

- With the ignition on, this warning light turns on and then off after a few seconds if the airbag system is working properly. This warning light is used to monitor the airbag ECU, collision sensors, inflation device, warning lights, connections, and power supply.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - When the ignition is switched on, this warning light remains off or is solid on after the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on or flashes during driving.



Parking brake system fault warning light

If any of the following conditions occurs, immediately park the vehicle at a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

This warning light lights up in the following conditions:

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on and the brake fluid level is low.

REMINDER

- When the brake fluid level is low, park the vehicle because it is dangerous to continue driving.

- When the engine is running, this indicator is solid on if the brake fluid level and EPB system operation are normal (the EPB is engaged and released normally, and the message "Please check the EPB" is not displayed).
- Fault warning lights for the parking brake system and ABS come on simultaneously. In this case, the parking brake system or the EPB may not work normally, lengthening the braking distance. Braking at this time can render the vehicle unstable, given the malfunction of the ABS system. Drive with caution.
- If this warning light lights up briefly during operation, it does not indicate a problem.

CAUTION

If any of the following conditions occurs, immediately park the vehicle at a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- When the engine is running and the light is still on, the brake may malfunction, resulting in extended stopping distances. Firmly depress the brake pedal to initiate an emergency stop.

Steering system fault warning light

- When the steering system is faulty, this warning light is steady on. It is recommended to bring the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

REMINDER

- The steering system features an electric motor to reduce the force required to turn the steering wheel.
- When turning the steering wheel, a hum may be heard from the running motor. This does not indicate that the motor is faulty.
- Do not turn the steering wheel to its limit position for more than five seconds, otherwise the activation of temperature protection will result in heavy steering or damage the steering system.

- If you have turned the steering wheel frequently with the vehicle staying put for a long time, the steering wheel may become difficult to turn even if the warning light does not turn on. This is not a fault.
  - To prevent steering system overheating, the power assist effect will be reduced if the steering wheel has been frequently turned with the vehicle staying put for a long time. As a result, the steering wheel become difficult to turn. Lower the steering frequency or power off the vehicle. The system will recover within 10 minutes.

WARNING

- If the steering system fault warning light goes on, immediately park the vehicle safely, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Coolant overheating indicator

- When the power gear is "ON", this light is on, indicating that the coolant temperature is high. It is recommended to stop the vehicle for cooling. In harsh conditions, like hot season and long periods of hill climbing and high speed driving, the engine may overheat.

 Low oil pressure warning light

- This light is about warning of low oil pressure. If this warning light flashes or remains on during driving, drive off the road, park the vehicle in a safe place, and shut down the engine immediately. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for help.
- When the engine is idling, this warning light may flash occasionally, or go on momentarily after emergency braking. When the engine is accelerating gradually, if this indicator goes out, the oil pressure is normal.
- This warning light goes on in case of very low oil level.

CAUTION

- Do not drive the vehicle when the warning light is on, even for a short distance. Otherwise, the engine may be damaged.

 Low-voltage power system fault warning light

- If this warning light turns on while driving, it indicates that there is a problem with the charging system, DC system, or low-voltage power system. The engine can continue igniting until the battery runs out. Turn off the air conditioning, fans, multimedia, etc., and drive to the nearest BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

 Powertrain fault warning light

- If the powertrain fails, this warning light turns on.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

CAUTION

- Try not to drive the vehicle when the warning light is on. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to check the problem as soon as possible.

 High-voltage battery overheating warning light

- If this warning light is on, it indicates that the high-voltage battery temperature is too high and the vehicle must be stopped to cool down. When the warning light flashes, it is recommended to immediately stop the vehicle safely and leave the vehicle as soon as possible.
- The high-voltage battery may overheat under the following operating conditions:
  - Driving up a slope for a long time in hot weather
  - Long period of stop-and-go traffic condition, frequent rapid acceleration, frequent hard braking,

or vehicle running for a long time without pause.

 High-voltage battery fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on. If the high-voltage battery system is working properly, this warning light will turn off in a few seconds. If this light lights up again thereafter, it indicates a system failure. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light is steady on or occasionally turns on while driving.

 AEB warning light*

- When this indicator is on or flashes, pay attention to the distance from the vehicle ahead, and do not get too close to it to prevent potential collision.

 TSR indicator*

- When this indicator lights up, it means that the vehicle system has recognized the speed limit value on current road section.

 GPF regeneration indicator*

- When the gasoline particulate filter (GPF) soot load (emitted particulate matter) reaches a certain level, the GPF will actively regenerate and the GPF indicator is solid green. Under suitable driving conditions, it is recommended to drive on highways as much as possible to allow the particulates to be burned off. Once regeneration is complete, the GPF indicator light will turn off automatically.

 GPF regeneration fault warning light*

- When the gasoline particulate filter (GPF) soot load (emitted particulate matter) reaches its maximum capacity, fuel consumption increases, power performance decreases, and the GPF indicator is solid yellow. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

REMINDER

- If the vehicle is driven in EV mode for a long time, this function starts the engine for maintenance and a prompt is displayed on the instrument cluster: The engine has been started for maintenance.

Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts

The instrument cluster may display the following fault prompts. Handle them as recommended.

Symbol	Fault Prompt	Response
	Check the OBC system	The on-board charging system is faulty. Check the charging connection, and reconnect the charging equipment. If the fault persists,

Symbol	Fault Prompt	Response
		contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Check the vehicle network	The vehicle may be disconnected from the data network. Park the vehicle at a safe place immediately, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Engine attachment limited	The engine system is faulty. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Check the headlamp system	The headlight is faulty. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	The AEB function is limited*	The automatic emergency braking (AEB) system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle at a safe place, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Check the BSD system*	The blind spot detection system for lane change is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle at a safe place, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	BSD limited*	The BSD function is limited. In this case, park the vehicle at a safe place, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Function safety failure*	The instrument cluster connection is faulty. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Check the gear system	The shifter controller is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle safely, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

03 CONTROLLER OPERATION

Doors and Keys.....48
Seats.....59
Steering Wheel.....63
Wipers..... 66
Rearview Mirrors.....69
Switches.....70

Doors and Keys

Keys

The vehicle is equipped with keys, including electronic smart key, mechanical key (installed in the electronic smart key), bluetooth digital key* and NFC key*.

Smart Key

Press the front door microswitch, while carrying the smart key, to unlock or lock all doors, or press smart key buttons to lock/unlock doors, unlock the trunk, or start the vehicle remotely.

① Indicator

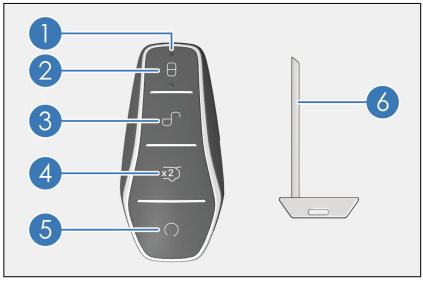
② Lock button

③ Unlock button

④ Trunk release button

⑤ Start/Stop button

⑥ Mechanical Key



WARNING

Button battery safety alert:

- The button (coin) battery in the smart key is hazardous and both new and used batteries are to be kept away from children at all times.
- If swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less.
- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the button battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

CAUTION

- The smart key is an electronic component. Observe the following instructions to prevent damage to the key:
  - Do not expose the smart key to high temperatures, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not disassemble the smart key.
  - Do not let the smart key hit other objects or fall down.
  - Do not immerse the key in water or clean it in the ultrasonic scrubber.
  - Do not place smart keys with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as the mobile phone.
  - Do not attach to the smart key any objects (such as a metal seal) capable of cutting off electromagnetic wave signals.
  - You can register a spare key for the same vehicle. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

CAUTION

- If the electronic smart key cannot operate the door within the normal distance, or the key indicator light is dim or off:
  - Check for nearby radio stations or airport radio transmitters that interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
  - The smart key battery may be exhausted. Check the battery inside the electronic smart key. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for battery change.
- If the smart key is lost or fails, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible to reduce the risk of vehicle theft or accidents.
- Do not change the transmission frequency arbitrarily, increase the transmission power (including additional transmission frequency amplifier), or arbitrarily connect the external detection antenna or switch other transmitting detection antennas.
- The use of the smart key must not cause harmful interference to legal radio communication services. Once interference is found, stop using the key immediately and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use.
- The use of micropower radio equipment must endure the interference of various radio services or the radiation interference of industrial, scientific, and medical equipment.

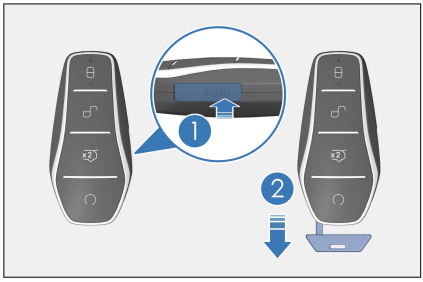
CAUTION

- Do not use it near aircraft or airports.
- People implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators should stay away from the detection antennas of intelligent entry and start systems, as electromagnetic waves can affect the normal use of such devices.
- In addition to people implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators, those who use other electronic medical devices should also consult the manufacturer on the use of such devices under the influence of electromagnetic waves. Electromagnetic waves may bring unknown consequences to the use of such medical devices.
- When leaving the vehicle, always carry your key and lock the vehicle. Never leave anyone (especially children) alone in the vehicle.

Mechanical Key

Use the mechanical key (inside the smart key) to lock or unlock the driver's door. Insert the mechanical key back into the smart key when it is not in use.

- Press the "PUSH" button ① on the smart key, and take out the mechanical key in the direction indicated by ②.



- To put the mechanical key back, press the PUSH button and then insert the mechanical key.

Bluetooth Digital Key*

Mobile Phone Bluetooth Digital Key*

The BYD Bluetooth digital key allows you to control the vehicle via a short-range Bluetooth connection between the smartphone and the vehicle, including functions such as unlocking and locking the car doors.

- You can download and install the latest BYD App in the app market. The function of Bluetooth digital key can be found in the app.
- If you are using a vehicle equipped with the Bluetooth digital key function, follow these steps to set up the key near the vehicle:

  1. Open the BYD app.
  2. Switch on the Bluetooth of your phone.
  3. Select the corresponding vehicle.
  4. Tap the "Bluetooth Key Setup" button on the vehicle page to activate the Bluetooth key.

- Turn on the Bluetooth on your phone, approach the vehicle, and open the BYD App for automatic Bluetooth digital key connection. You can also connect it manually. The key is effective after Bluetooth is connected.
- The specific functions supported by the key are subject to the vehicle configuration. The Bluetooth key operates through a Bluetooth connection and sends control commands to the vehicle, without relying on mobile network status.
- When you unbind the vehicle or cancel the cloud service, your Bluetooth key will be deleted.

CAUTION

- Before activating the Bluetooth key, ensure that the vehicle network signal is good. If the activation fails, try to move the vehicle to a place with good network and activate the key again in the application.
- After the vehicle is unlocked with a Bluetooth digital key, the doors may lock automatically if there is no operation in a short time.
- When the Bluetooth key connection or operation fails for many times, you can turn the Bluetooth off and then on, or restart the application.
- Limited by the vehicle environment and mobile phone performance, the effective distance of the key will be reduced in case of dense vehicles.
- The Bluetooth digital key requires your smartphone's Bluetooth and location services to be turned on. If you encounter any issues, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The operating system versions supported by the mobile Bluetooth car key are iOS 16 and above, and Android 6.0 and above.

NFC Digital Key*

- The NFC digital key is a digital key solution provided by BYD. You can register smartphones or wearable devices as vehicle keys to unlock, lock, and start the vehicle.
- Before activating the NFC digital key, ensure that:
  - You have registered BYD Cloud Service for the vehicle.
  - Your vehicle supports NFC digital key.
  - Your smartphone or wearable device supports BYD NFC digital key (consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for supported devices).

Activating the NFC digital key on smartphones

When activating the NFC digital key on smartphones, ensure the vehicle is in a safe gear. Follow the instructions bellow to activate:

- Via the BYD app:
  - Download BYD App from the App Store, then register and log in. Navigate to **Digital Key** and follow the instructions to activate the key.

Activating the NFC digital key on wearable devices

Supported wearable devices include Apple Watch (consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for other supported devices), and there are two ways of activation:

- Synchronize the key from iPhone to Apple Watch:
  - After successful key activation on iPhone, the device prompts to add the NFC digital key to a paired Apple Watch which is nearby and unlocked. Follow the prompts to complete activation.
- Via the Watch app:
  - If the iPhone NFC key is active but not synced to Apple Watch, open the Watch app on iPhone, select **Wallet**, find the key, and tap **Add** to activate the key following the instructions.

Using the NFC digital key

Ensure the NFC function is enabled on your device before using the NFC digital key. Here is how to use:

- Carry a mobile phone or wearable device with a valid NFC digital key, put its NFC antenna area close to NFC sensor area on the driver's side mirror, and unlock or lock the vehicle. Consult the manufacturers for details of the NFC antenna area.

CAUTION

- After authorizing vehicle start with the NFC digital key, start the vehicle promptly, If the vehicle is not started in time, place the mobile phone or wearable device close to NFC sensor area on the driver's side mirror again to obtain the permission.

Removing the NFC digital key

You can remove the NFC digital key in any of the two ways:

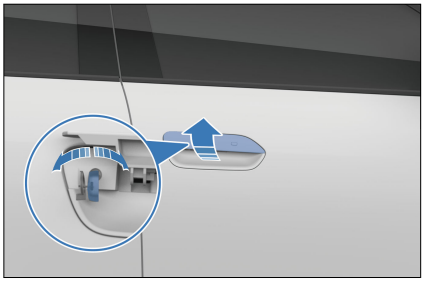
- Via the BYD app:
  - Open the BYD app and navigate to the digital key management screen, select the key to remove, and enter the password to remove it.
- Via the Wallet app:
  - Open the Wallet app on the phone, select the digital key, and remove it following the instructions.

Locking/Unlocking Doors

Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key

Insert the key into the key hole, turn and remove the key, and pull the door handle to open the door.

- Unlock the driver's door: Turn the key counterclockwise.
- Lock the driver's door: Turn the key clockwise.

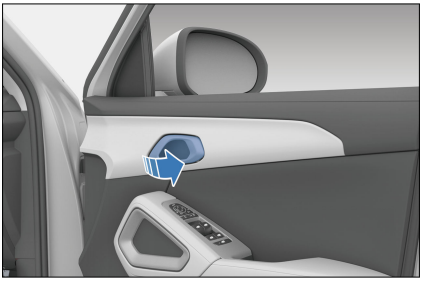


CAUTION

- After removing the mechanical key, pull the driver's door handle to open the door.

Opening with Interior Door Handle

- When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the handle once to open the door from inside the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked, pull the handle twice to open the door from inside the vehicle.



WARNING

- Do not allow children to play with the door handle, so as to avoid door opening while driving.
- If there are children in the vehicle, make sure to enable the child protection lock function.

CAUTION

- Using mechanical connections, the interior door handles remain can open the doors even when the vehicle is powered off.
- As this vehicle is equipped with a mechanical child protection lock, the rear doors can only be opened with the interior door handle when the child protection lock is disabled.

Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key

- The wireless remote control is used to unlock or lock all doors at a close distance, and complete additional functions.
- When you enter the active area while carrying a registered smart key, press the button on the smart key slowly and firmly to lock or unlock all doors.

Locking:

- When all the doors, the trunk, and the hood are closed, press the lock button to lock all the doors. Check whether all doors are securely locked.
  - If the ignition is switched off, the side mirrors fold in* (when side mirror auto fold* is enabled on the infotainment system) with turn signals flashing once.



  - If the ignition is switched on, the side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once.
  - If any door, the hood or the trunk is not closed, the side mirrors do not fold, the turn signals do not flash and the alarm sounds once.

Unlocking:

- Press the unlock button to unlock all the doors at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.
- When you unlock all the doors with the smart key, even if no door is opened, the interior lights may stay on for 15 seconds and then go out.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open any door within 30 seconds after unlocking with the smart key. Otherwise, all the doors will lock automatically.

Lockout prevention function

- If the key is in the vehicle when the doors are closed and locked, the vehicle automatically unlocks and the turn signals will flash twice.

Finding the Vehicle with Smart Key

- With the anti-theft alarm system armed, pressing the lock button sounds a long beep and makes turn signals flash 15 times. Use this function to locate the vehicle when it cannot be found.
- When the vehicle is in car search mode, press the lock button again. The vehicle enters the next car search mode.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key*

- When the ignition is switched off:
  - Press and hold the lock button on the smart key to raise the four windows.
  - Press and hold the unlock button on the smart key to lower the four windows.
- To enable or disable key window locking and closing/unlocking and opening functions, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Windows** (configurations of the actual vehicle prevail).

WARNING

- When using the remote control function to raise windows, pay attention to the safety of occupants in the vehicle, and use this function only after making sure the windows are clear from pinching anyone.

Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch

Locking

- When the ignition is switched off and all doors are closed but not locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key. All doors will be locked and turn signals flash once.
- If a door, the hood or the trunk is not closed, pressing the microswitch will still lock the closed doors, but the horn will only sound once, and the turn signals will not flash.



Unlocking

- When doors are locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key close to the activated area. All doors unlock and turn signals flash twice.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking. Otherwise, all the doors will relock automatically.
- Pressing the microswitch does not work if:
  - This is performed while a door is being opened or closed.
  - The smart key is left in the vehicle.
- If the smart key is too close to an exterior door handle or window, it may not be possible to activate the entry function.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Microswitch

- With the ignition off, press and hold the microswitch while carrying the smart key to roll up or down all windows (By default, lifting the window function is activated and lowering the window function is disabled).
- To enable or disable microswitch window locking and closing/unlocking and opening functions, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Windows**.

Locking/Unlocking with NFC Key*

Locking doors

- When doors are closed but unlocked, hold the NFC key close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror. All doors can then be locked at the same time. The turn signals flash once when the vehicle is powered off.



Unlocking doors

- When doors are locked, hold the NFC key close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror. Then all doors can be unlocked at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.
- Putting the effective NFC key close to designated area on the driver's side mirror does not work if:

- This is performed while the door is opened or closed.

- To use the NFC digital key* on the phone, enable the NFC function of the phone and hold the top back part of the phone close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror.

CAUTION

- The NFC digital key may not work on some phones when they are turned off.
- Avoid using the NFC digital key of your phone for extended periods or frequently when it is out of battery or turned off.

REMINDER

- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking with the NFC key, or all doors will relock automatically.
- Unlocking with the NFC key allows starting the vehicle without a key in a stipulated period, while this will be disabled after a valid locking operation.

Unlocking the Trunk

Unlocking the trunk with smart key

- Double-press the trunk release button on the smart key. The turn signals then flash twice.



Unlocking the Trunk with Microswitch

- With the ignition off and the anti-theft alarm system armed, approach and press the rear microswitch while carrying a valid key to unlock the trunk.
- When the anti-theft alarm system is disarmed, press the rear microswitch to open the trunk.

WARNING

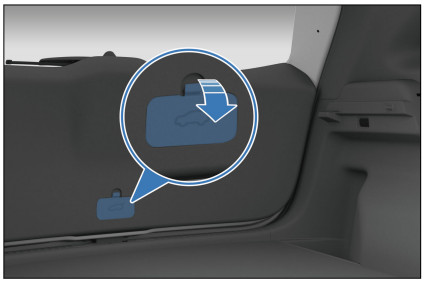
- In order to prevent serious injury, make sure to observe the following precautions:
  - Make sure to alert people nearby of the lid motion.
  - Make sure fingers or other objects are clear from the lid area when it is closing.
  - Make sure the surrounding area is safe when opening or closing the trunk.
  - Make sure the trunk is properly closed when the vehicle is in motion.
  - Be mindful of windy conditions when opening or closing the trunk.
  - The lid may start closing before fully opening. Opening or closing the trunk on slopes is more difficult than on level ground. Be mindful of the

WARNING

possibility of the lid to move on its own in such conditions. Before loading or unloading the trunk, make sure the lid is fully open and secure.

Emergency Trunk Releasing from the Inside

There is an emergency unlocking cover just above the trunk lock. Open the cover and pull the emergency unlocking rope or lever to open the trunk in an emergency.



REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered off, the trunk lid can be unlocked from the inside in case of emergency.

Locking/Unlocking with Central Locking

Locking or unlocking with central locking

See ***P75*** in "Driver's Door Switches" in this chapter.

Locking or unlocking doors automatically

- All doors automatically lock at vehicle speeds above 8 km/h.
- Press the START/STOP button to switch the ignition off. All doors unlock automatically.

Locking/unlocking all doors concurrently

- When the vehicle is not in anti-theft mode, the backlight of the central locking button turns on if the vehicle is locked and turns off if the vehicle is unlocked.
- Pressing the central lock button locks all doors so that any attempt to open any door from the outside fails. At this time, pull the interior handle to unlock a door and pull a second time to open it.

REMINDER

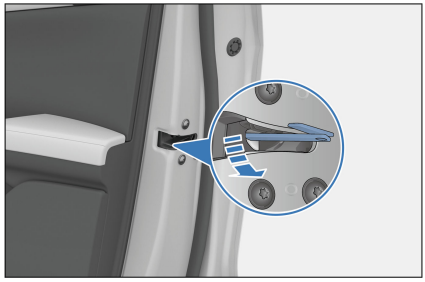
- All doors unlock automatically when the vehicle suffers a strong impact, depending on the impact intensity and accident type.

Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key

When the central locking system or the smart key fails, use the mechanical key for emergency locking or unlocking.

Locking

1. Remove the mechanical key from the smart key.
2. Open all doors other than the driver's door and move down the slider with the mechanical key as shown. You can then lock the doors by closing the them.



3. After locking the three doors, open the driver's door.
4. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it clockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out. (See "Locking/ Unlocking with Mechanical Key" in this Chapter.)

Unlocking

1. Remove the mechanical key from the smart key.
2. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it counterclockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out.
3. Pull the interior handle twice to unlock the rest of the doors.

REMINDER

- Prevent excessive force from distorting or breaking the key during the operation.

Smart Access and Start System

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors and start the vehicle.

Access

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors (see ***P52***).

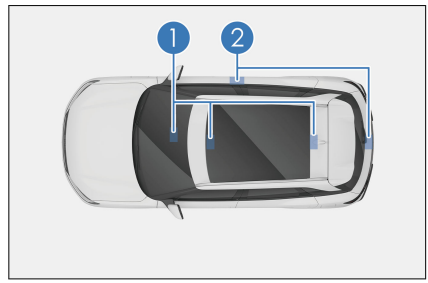
Start-up

With the smart key inside, press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button to start the vehicle (see ***P107***).

Antenna positions

① Interior antenna

② Exterior antenna



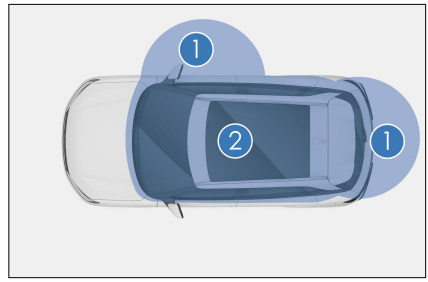
Active area

The smart access and start functions take effect only when the registered smart key is within the active area.

① Active area of the access function: about one meter from the front door handle and the exterior trunk switch.

② Active area of the start function: inside the cabin.

If another smart key is near this vehicle's smart key, unlocking may take longer than usual, which is normal.



REMINDER

In the following situation, smart access and start system may not work normally:

- There is a strong electromagnetic field nearby, such as TV towers, power stations, and broadcasting stations.
- The smart key is being carried along with a two-way radio, mobile phone or other communication devices.
- The smart key is in contact with or covered by a metal object.
- The door handle is operated too quickly.
- The smart key is too close to the handle.
- Another wireless remote control function is being used nearby.
- When the smart key battery runs out.
- The smart key is close to high-voltage equipment or equipment that produces noise.
- The smart key is being carried along with another smart key or radio-wave-emitting device.
- Even within the active area, the smart key may not work properly in certain locations, for example, on the dashboard, in the glove box, or on the floor.

- If the smart access system is not working properly and it is impossible to enter the vehicle, use the mechanical key in the smart key to lock/unlock the driver's door, or lock/unlock all doors with the wireless remote control function.
- Pressing the START/STOP button may not enable the start function due to:
  - Smart key failure. If the smart key warning light comes on and a message ("Low key battery, please replace the battery soon") is displayed on the instrument cluster, the battery of the key may be exhausted.
  - The vehicle has been started repeatedly in a short time. Wait for 10 seconds before starting the vehicle again.
- If the smart access and start system cannot work properly due to system failures, bring all smart keys to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.

Saving battery power

- The smart key communicates with the vehicle even when the vehicle is not running. Therefore, do not leave the smart key in the vehicle or within two meters from the vehicle.
- Receiving strong electromagnetic waves for a long time drains the battery of the smart key quickly. The smart key must be kept at least one meter away from electrical equipment that generates a magnetic field, such as the following devices:
  - Television
  - Personal computer
  - Phone charger
  - Electroliers
  - Fluorescent desk lamp

Child Protection Lock

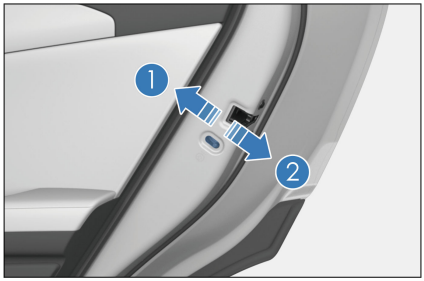
Child protection locks are designed to prevent children in rear seats from accidentally opening rear doors. Such

locks are provided on the sides of the left and right rear doors.

① Locking

② Unlocking

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle while the latch is locked. Use the exterior door handle to open this door.



WARNING

- Before driving, especially when a child is in the vehicle, ensure that the doors are closed and the child protection lock function is enabled.
- Proper use of seat belts and the child protection lock helps prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out of the vehicle in the event of an accident, and prevent the doors from being opened accidentally.

Seats

Seat Precautions

- Adjust the driver's seat so that the pedals, steering wheel, and dashboard controls are within the driver's easy control.
- While driving, the most effective safeguard is to keep the seatback upright, always rest well on the seatback, and adjust the seat belt to the right position.
- Do not fold or unfold the rear seats when the vehicle is in motion.
- Secure your luggage appropriately to prevent it from skidding or moving. Luggage in the vehicle should not be higher than seatbacks.
- The head support can only protect your head when it is in the proper position. Remember to adjust it to the proper position if it has been moved.

WARNING

- Sitting on a folded seatback, in the trunk, or on the cargo is prohibited. Improper seating position or improperly fastened seat belts can result in personal injuries in case of emergency braking or a collision.
- Do not place any items under the seats. The driver may lose control of the vehicle because items placed there affect the seat locking mechanism, causing the seat to move suddenly.
- When adjusting the seat, ensure sufficient space around the seat and in the rear seating area for children, passengers, or pets. Avoid squeezing or trapping children, occupants, or pets in the rear seat area.
- Maintain a safe distance from surrounding occupants' foot areas when adjusting the seat to avoid compression or entrapment.
- When adjusting the seat, do not place your hand under the seat or

WARNING

near its operating parts to prevent being crushed.

- After adjusting the seatback, lean back to confirm the seatback is locked. Seatbacks that are not fully locked can cause personal injuries in an accident or emergency braking.
- Do not put the seatback down while driving or riding in the vehicle. This makes the shoulder strap of the seat belt not properly attached to the body. As a result, occupants in the vehicle could hit the strap in an accident, causing injuries to the neck or other parts; or they may slip out of the waist belt, resulting in other serious injuries.
- Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is in motion, as unpredictable seat movement can cause the loss of vehicle control.
- Do not drive the vehicle until occupants are seated properly.
- Do not allow children to adjust the seat without adult supervision to avoid any injury.

CAUTION

- Adjust the seat position before fastening seat belts.

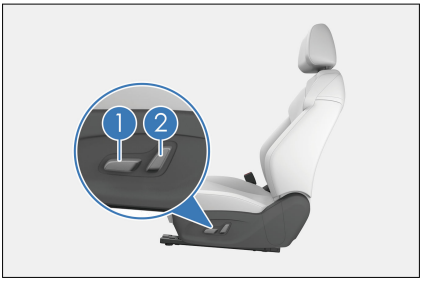
Adjusting Front Seats

Adjusting Front Seat with Power*

Power front seat adjustments allow you to adjust seatback recline, cushion height, and seatback angle. Choose the following adjustments according to the actual configuration of your vehicle.

① Seat position adjustment switch

- Move the seat position adjustment switch back or forth to slide the seat backward or forward.
- Move the rear end of the switch up or down to adjust cushion height.



② Seatback angle adjustment switch

- Toggle the upper end of the seatback angle adjustment switch to adjust the seatback angle.

CAUTION

- Releasing the switch stops the seat in this position. Do not place anything under the seat as this may prevent the seat from operating.
- Do not move the front seats too far forward to avoid contact with the roof or sun visor.

Adjusting Front Seats Manually*

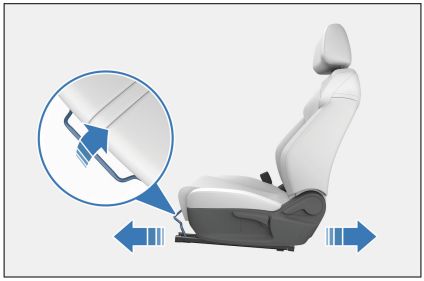
Manual front seat adjustment includes seat position adjustment, seat height adjustment, and seatback angle adjustment. Choose the following methods according to the actual configuration of your vehicle.

Seat position adjustment lever

- To move forward or backward, hold the middle of the adjustment lever to

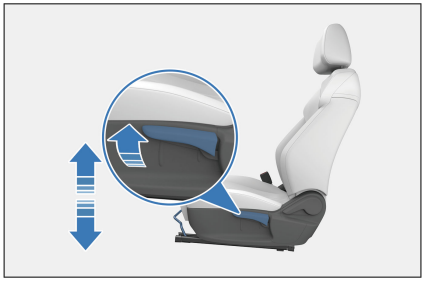
pull it up, slide the seat to the desired position, and release.

- After adjusting the seat, always check that it is securely locked into place (i.e., a locking sound is heard) by attempting to push it forward and backward.



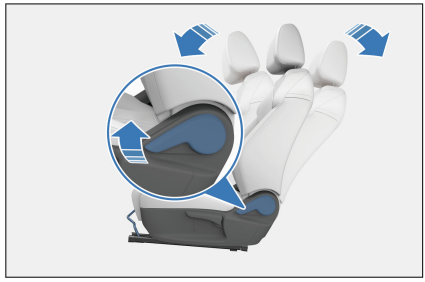
Adjusting the seat height*

- Pull up and press down the lever repeatedly to adjust to a suitable height.



Seatback adjustment handle

- Pull up the adjustment handle, and lean back or forward to adjust the seatback angle. Release when you have found the desired position.



Seat Heating*

- Enable or disable seat heating via the shortcut menu by swiping down from the top status bar of the infotainment touchscreen or via the infotainment touchscreen → .

Heating adjustment

- Seat heating: On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the seat heating icon to control the heating level.

Folding Rear Seats

- Flipping and lowering the seatback
  - Pull the cord to straighten the seatback.
  - Push the seatback forward/backward to fold it. You can fold the seatback forward until the back touches the cushion, or you can fold it backward until reaching the locking position (with a locking click).



REMINDER

- Please fold or unfold the rear seats at a moderate speed. Avoid quickly lowering or pulling up seat backs to prevent damages to or malfunction of rear seats and the seat belts.
- When unfolding a rear seat, do not push the seatback hard; otherwise, the seatback will be pre-stressed and impossible to unlock.
- When unfolding a seatback, check that the buckle position is proper to expose the reserved opening on the seat.
- Do not turn over the seat when the seat belt latch is inserted into the buckle.

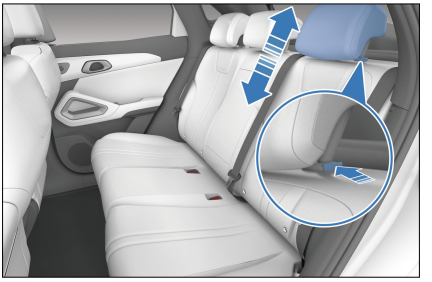
Head Supports

- Lifting a head support

  Lift the head support to a proper position, and release it after hearing a locking sound.

- Lowering a head support

  Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, and then release the button after hearing a locking sound.



- Removing a head support

  Press and hold the head support adjustment button, remove the head support, and release the button.

- Installing a head support

  Insert the head support post into the bushing with the grooves facing forward. Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, slightly lift the head support and release the button after hearing a locking sound.

REMINDER

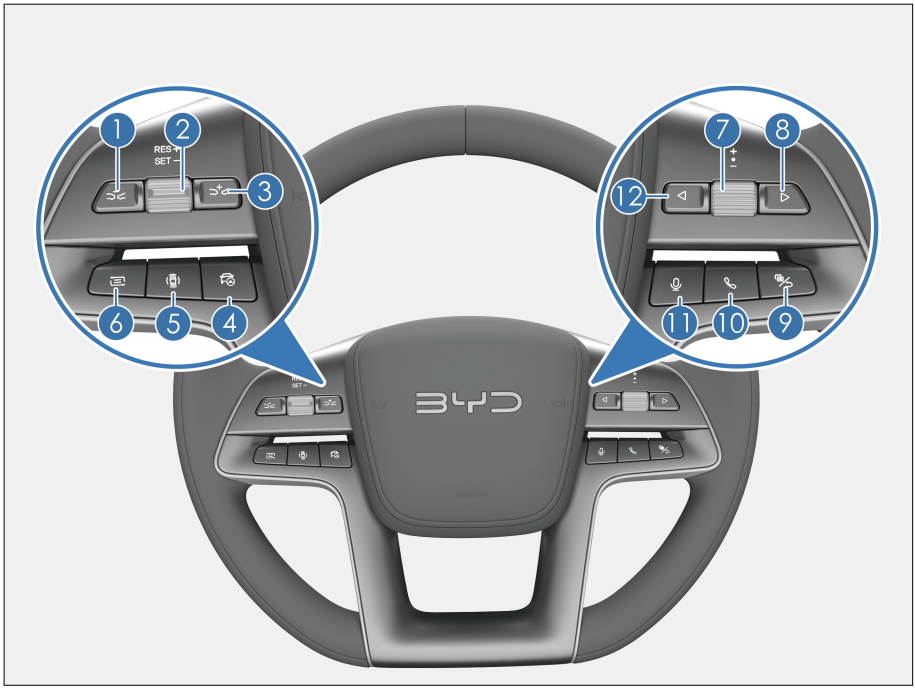
- Head supports protect vehicle occupants from head and neck injuries. Adjust the head support so that its center aligns with the back of your head for maximum protection. Adjust the head support to the proper position based on your actual height.
- When adjusting head support height, align the occupant's ear tip line with the center line of the head support.
- After the adjustment, press down the head support to make sure that it is locked.

REMINDER

- Do not drive the vehicle without head supports.
- Do not attach any objects to the head support levers.

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Switches



1	Distance -	7	Scroll button
2	Rocker switch	8	Right
3	Distance +	9	Instrument cluster/Back
4	ACC	10	Call
5	AVM*	11	Speech recognition
6	Driving information	12	Left

Left-hand buttons

Rocker switch

- Reset/+: Restores the speed stored before exiting from the cruise system last time.

- Setup -: Sets to cruise at the current speed.

Distance +

- Increases the distance by one level when the ACC function is enabled. A total of four levels are available.

Distance -

- Reduces the distance from the vehicle ahead by one level when the ACC function is enabled. A total of four levels are available.

ACC

- Press this button to enable or disable the adaptive cruise control (ACC) system.

AVM*

- Press this button to enable or disable the around view monitor (AVM) system.

Driving information

- Press this button to switch the driving information interface. Press and hold to clear the relevant driving information.

Right-hand buttons

Scroll button

- Adjusting infotainment system volume when the instrument cluster is not in menu mode:
  - Roll the button upward to increase the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the highest.
  - Roll the button downward to decrease the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the lowest.
  - Press down the button to mute.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode:
  - Roll the button upward to select the upper level-2 or level-3 menu items.
  - Roll the button downward to select the lower level-2 or level-3 menu items.
  - Press down the button to go to the next-level menu or confirm the current setting.

CAUTION

- The infotainment system is muted once the instrument cluster is set to the menu mode. To adjust infotainment system volume, exit the instrument cluster menu mode first.

Left/Right button

- When the infotainment system is in radio mode:
  - Press ◁ to select the previous radio station.
  - Press ▷ to select the next radio station.
- In USB/Bluetooth music/third-party music app/other modes:
  - Press ◁ to play the previous track (track number -1).
  - Press ◁ to select a record upward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.
  - Press ▷ to play the next track (track number +1).
  - Press ▷ to select a record downward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.
- In the menu mode:
  - Press ◁ to switch to the previous menu and its submenus on the left.

- Press ▷ to switch to the next menu and its submenus on the right.

Instrument cluster/Back

- When the instrument cluster is not in the menu mode, press Instrument cluster/Back to show the instrument cluster menu.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode, press this button to return to the upper-level screen, or to exit the menu if there is no upper-level screen.
- When on the Bluetooth call screen, press this button to end the call.

Call

- Press this button to make or receive a call (the audio system is muted at the same time).
- When a Bluetooth-unrelated screen is currently displayed, press this button to switch to the phone selection screen if Bluetooth is disconnected, or to the Dial screen if Bluetooth is connected.
- After entering a phone number on the Dial screen or selecting a record on the Call Log or Contacts screen, press this button to dial the number.
- When Bluetooth is connected, but no phone number is entered on the Dial screen, press this button to switch to the call log screen. Press this button again to call the first dialed number on the call history.

Speech recognition

- Press this button to activate speech recognition on the infotainment touchscreen, with which you can record voice commands.
- Press a second time to exit speech recognition.

Horn

- Press the horn button area to honk the horn, and release to stop honking.

CAUTION

- Avoid prolonged honking to prevent damage to the horn.

REMINDER

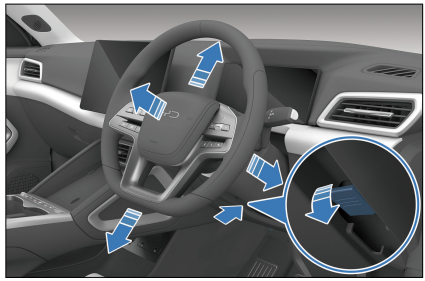
- Observe the traffic laws and use the horn properly.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually

To adjust the steering wheel position, hold it and operate as follows:

- Press the steering wheel adjustment handle, move the steering wheel to the desired angle, or adjust it to the desired axial position, and restore the handle to the locked position.



WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving, as this is under risk of impaired vehicle control, which can lead to accidents.

WARNING

- After adjusting the steering wheel, move it up and down to verify that it is securely locked.

Steering Assist Mode Settings

- The level of steering assistance can be adjusted to individual preferences.
- To set the steering mode, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Driving Control**. → **Steering Assist Mode**, and select Comfort or Sport.

REMINDER

- Setting the steering mode to sport mode is suggested if the steering wheel feels light when the vehicle is running at a high speed.

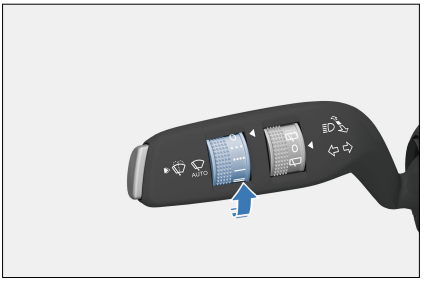
Wipers

Wiper Switches

Windshield Wipers and Washer

Front wipers

- The lever is used to control the front windshield wipers and washer among the following five modes:
  - 0 : OFF
  - • • • : Auto/Intermittent wipers level 1
  - • • • • : Auto/Intermittent wipers level 2
  - ▬ : Continuous, slow
  - ▬ : Continuous, fast
- Toggle down or up the rocker switch on the rear side of the lever to select a mode.



Auto wipers

- You can enable the auto wiper function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Comfort Driving**. Once enabled, the wipers will swipe once and then switch to the auto mode, adjusting based on rain intensity.
- In auto mode, toggle down or up the rocker switch on the rear side of the lever to select a mode.

WARNING

- If the ignition is on, and the wipers are set to auto mode, touching or wiping the glass on the sensor area may activate the wipers and cause an accident.

CAUTION

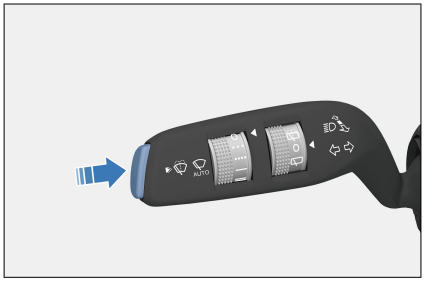
- Turn off the auto wipers vehicle washes, in dry weather, or on rain-free days, to prevent inadvertent wiper operation.
- When the wiper stops midway for snow accumulation and other reasons, please turn it off, park the vehicle in a safe place, and remove the snow and other

CAUTION

debris, so that the wiper can work properly.

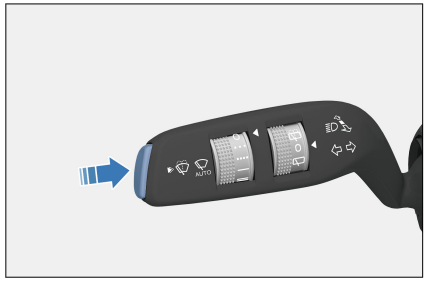
- The sensor may occasionally fail to properly detect snowflakes, as they have various shapes, which could lead to wiper malfunction. After the snow melts, the wipers may automatically activate.

- To operate the wipers in point-wiping mode, press the button at the end of the control lever to the first position. The wipers wipe at a low speed until the button is released.



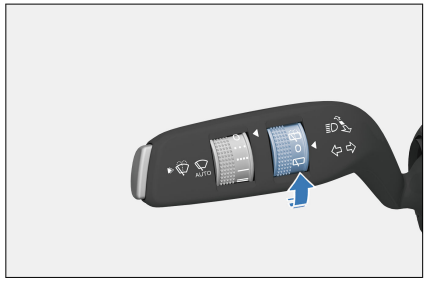
Front windshield washer

- To clean the front windshield, press the button at the end of the control lever to the second position. The washer spray continuously, and the wipers will start working afterward.
- If the control lever is released, or if the operation lasts longer than 10 seconds, the washer stops spraying, and the wipers will complete 1 to 2 wiping cycles before stopping.



Rear wiper

- Set the rear wiper switch to to enable the intermittent rear wiper function.
- Set the rear wiper switch to or open the trunk to stop the rear wiper.
- Set the rear wiper switch to and hold it to activate the rear wiper and washer simultaneously.



- Set the rear wiper switch to and release it. The wiper will operate once or twice after washing fluid has been sprayed.

CAUTION

- Check and clean the wiper blades at regular intervals.
- Do not start the wipers while rain is starting, as the windshield cannot be cleaned and rainwater mixed with sand and dust may

CAUTION

instantly blur your view, affecting driving safety.

- When the wiper stops midway for snow accumulation and other reasons, please turn it off, park the vehicle in a safe place, and remove the snow and other debris, so that the wiper can work properly.
- Use cleaning agent for glass. The use of water, or another type of detergent, may damage the washer motor.
- Do not operate the washer for over 10 seconds, or when the washer fluid tank is empty, as those may cause motor overheating or damage.

Replacing Wiper Blades

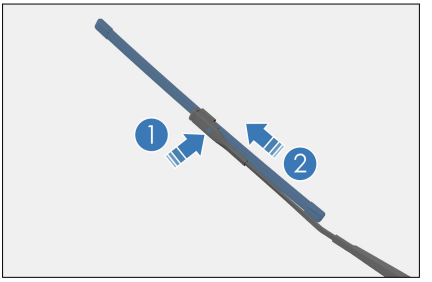
Inspect wiper blades for cracks or partial hardening at least every six months. If they are noted, replace wiper blades. Otherwise, the windshield will streak or will be left unclean after wiping.

Replacing Wiper Blades

When the vehicle is powered on, enable or disable the front wiper check on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Service** → **Overhaul** →**Front Wiper Check**. When the corresponding wiper check function is enabled, the wipers rotate out automatically for easy maintenance and replacement.

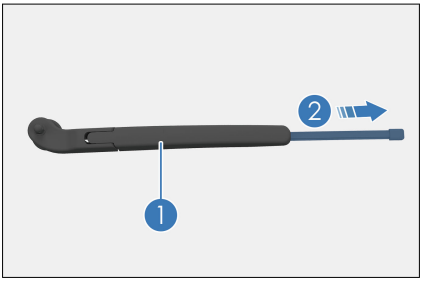
Replacing front wiper

1. Pull up the wiper arm at the driver side, and then pull up the other at the passenger side.
2. Press the wiper lock button ①.
3. Hold the wiper blade and pull it out along the indicated direction ②.
4. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



Replacing rear wiper

1. Pull up the wiper arm.
2. Hold the wiper in position ①, and pull the blade out along the indicated direction ②.
3. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



CAUTION

- Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are pulled up, as this may damage the hood and wiper arms.
- Lower the wipers slowly and avoid direct impact onto the windshield.
- Do not bend the wiper blade, and do not obstruct the wiper blade when the wiper is in operation.

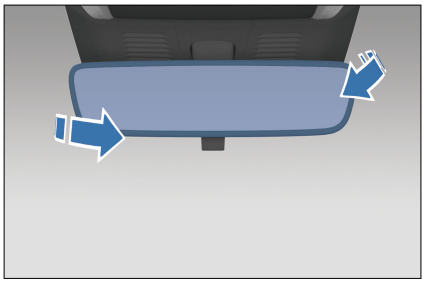
CAUTION

- When replacing the wiper blade, after raising the wiper arm, hold it steady and gently lower it after replacing the wiper blade. Otherwise, before the wiper blade is installed, any external force could make the wiper arm snap back on the glass and risk breaking it.

Rearview Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirrors

Move the interior rearview mirror up or down, left or right to a suitable position.



WARNING

- Do not hang heavy objects from the interior rearview mirror, or shake or drag it with force.
- When manually adjusting the interior rearview mirror, do not forcibly adjust the stuck mirror to avoid the mirror falling off.
- Adjusting the rearview mirror before driving. Do not adjust the rearview mirror while driving. This may distract your attention,

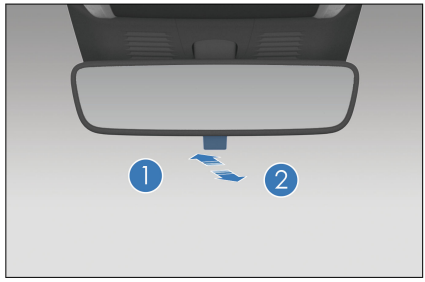
WARNING

causing personal injury or death from accidents.

Manual Anti-glare Interior Rearview Mirror*

The mirror has two working modes: normal and anti-glare.

- Normal mode: turn the lever to position ① to have the clearest rear view from the mirror.
- Anti-glare mode: turn the lever to position ②, which reduces interference from headlights of rear vehicles at night. Be aware that this glare reduction also compromises the clarity of the rear view.



Side Mirrors

Adjusting Side Mirrors

Use the associated switches to adjust the side mirrors to see the sides of the vehicle.

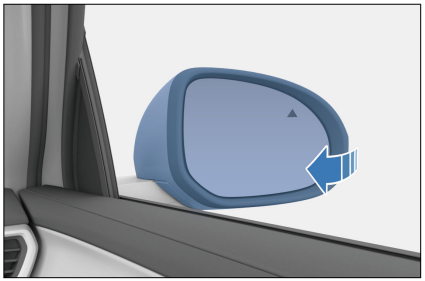
- Selection switches: selects the side mirror to be adjusted.
  - : Left side mirror button
  - : Right side mirror button

- Side mirror adjustment buttons : Press this button to adjust the side mirror lens to an appropriate position.



Folding Side Mirrors

- **Folding side mirrors with power***
  - Fold switch : folds or unfolds both side mirrors.
  - Both side mirrors fold automatically when the anti-theft alarm system is armed, and extend automatically when the system is disarmed.



- To enable or disable side mirror auto fold, go to the infotainment touchscreen → → **Vehicle** → **Comfort Driving**.

WARNING

- Adjust the side mirrors before driving. Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. This may distract your attention, causing accidents.

REMINDER

- Do not operate the controller or scrape the surfaces of frozen side mirrors. Use de-icer spray to remove the ice.

Side Mirror Defrosters*

Tap this button on the A/C operation interface to activate the function, and the heating panel in side mirrors will quickly clear the side mirrors.

REMINDER

- Using the side mirror electric heating defrosting function for a long time may cause the mirror to wear out faster. Turn off the defrost button when it is not needed.

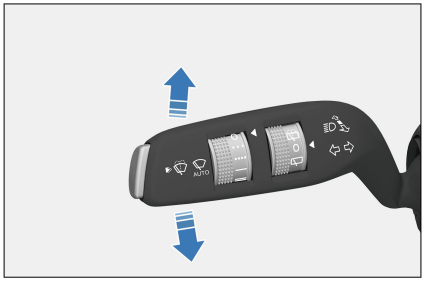
Switches

Light Switches

- Auto lights, position lights, low beam lights, rear fog lights, and daytime running lights can be controlled on the infotainment system.
- To turn on or off any of these lights or turn off all of them, go to the infotainment touchscreen → → **Light**→ **Exterior**.

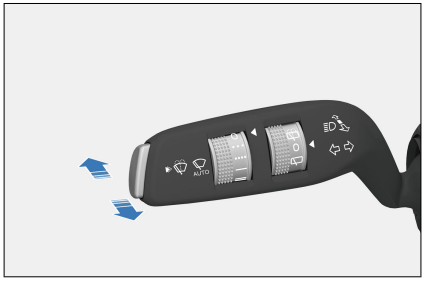
Turn signals

- Push up the lever to turn on the right turn signal and push down the lever to turn on the left turn signal.



High beam

- When the auto light or low beam function is activated in the infotainment system, push the lever to turn on or off the high beams.
  - Push the lever forward (away from the steering wheel) to turn on the high beams and then they are solid on.
  - Pull the lever back (close to the steering wheel) and the high beam flashes. Release the lever for the light switch to automatically reset and the high beams turn off.



REMINDER

- The light intensity sensor is located on the top of the windshield. Do not block the sensor or let anything splash on it.

Auto light off

- Conditions to activate the auto light off function: to activate this function, set the switch to "Position Lamp" or "Dipped Beam" and switch off the vehicle power.
- When the auto light off function is activated, the headlights, position lights, rear fog lights, and high beams turn off in 10 seconds if the driver's door is closed.
- When the auto light off function is activated, the headlights, position lights, rear fog lights, and high beams turn off in 10 minutes if the driver's door is open.
- After the lights turn off automatically, if the light status changes, these lights come on in the new status. If the conditions to activate the auto light off function are still met, the function is activated again.
- Disabling the auto light off function: When the vehicle is powered on, the auto light off function is disabled, and the light switch can be operated normally.
- If the auto light off function has turned off the lights and the anti-theft alarm system has been armed, disarming the alarm system makes the lights come on again automatically. If the driver's door remains closed, the lights go off again after 10 seconds. But if any door is open, it turns off the lights in 10 minutes.

Headlights after exit and headlights before enter

- Headlights after exit:
  - Set the time for "Headlights after Exit" on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Courtesy Light** (default: 10 seconds). With the lights set to "AUTO", "Position Lamp" or "Dipped Beam", when you power off the vehicle, lock four doors and attempt to leave the vehicle, the corresponding lights will

continue to light up for 10 seconds (or the set time) to provide coming-home lighting.

- Headlights before enter:
  - Set the time for "Headlights before Enter" on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Courtesy Light** (default: 10 seconds). With the light adjustment switch turned to "Auto", "Position Lamp" or "Dipped Beam", when you unlock the vehicle and attempt to approach it, the corresponding lights will light up for 10 seconds (or the set time) to provide the leaving-home lighting.

Headlight Height

- To adjust headlight height, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Exterior Light**.

Adaptive Front Light (AFL)*

- Adaptive front light (AFL) is a driver assistance function that helps the driver use the high beams correctly in the dark. In the dark, the system switches from low beam to high beam to provide the driver with the maximum field of vision. When an oncoming vehicle is detected, the system automatically switches from high beam to low beam to prevent dazzling other drivers. It also automatically switches to low beam in urban areas or under other conditions.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **Light** → **Exterior**.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- AFL indicators:

AFL standby	AFL activated	AFL fault
		

AFL on/off conditions

- Auto activation conditions:
  - The light switch is in the AUTO position.
  - The vehicle speed is 35 km/h ⩽ 140km/h.
  - The area in front of the vehicle is dark.
- Auto off conditions:
  - During daylight or nighttime conditions, the system automatically suppresses the high beam when sufficient ambient lighting is detected on the road.
  - At night, the system automatically suppresses the high beam when other vehicles or pedestrians are detected within a certain range in front of the vehicle.
  - At night, turning on turn signal suppresses the high beam. After the turn signal is turned off, the high beam is activated again if conditions are met.

WARNING

Due to a variety of environmental factors and conditions, AFL may be triggered or disabled by mistake. Typical scenarios include, but are not limited to:

- The weather, such as fog, rain or snow, is extremely terrible for driving.
- There are traffic participants with poor lighting (such as pedestrians and bicycles), railways or waterways nearby, or wild animals on the roads.
- There are strongly reflective objects around, such as traffic signs on highways and water reflection on the road surface.
- The front windshield is dirty, covered in mist, or blocked by stickers or decorations.

CAUTION

- AFL is an auxiliary light control function and cannot completely replace the driver's judgement. The driver must observe road regulations and actively switch between high and low beams according to road condition changes at all times.
- In case the vehicle has been involved in a collision or the sensor has been reassembled, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for sensor calibration so as to avoid affecting system performance.

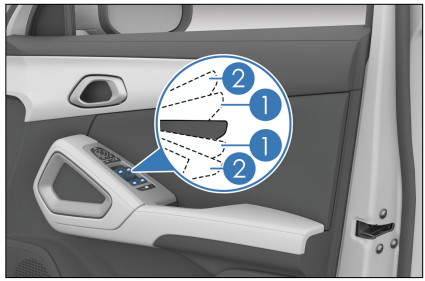
REMINDER

- System malfunctions or lighting system failures can affect the AFL function.
- Activating the high beam manually will suppress the AFL function.

Driver's Door Switches

Power Window Switches

- When the vehicle is in "ON"/"OK", all window switches can roll up or down the window.
  - Press a window switch to roll the window down.
  - Pull up a window switch to roll the window up.



Manual operation

- Press or pull a window switch to position ① and hold to lower or raise the associated window. Release the switch to stop the window where you want it.

Automatic up/down function

- Press or pull a window switch to position ② and release to automatically lower or raise the associated window. During the process, operate the switch in any direction to stop the window midway.

Anti-pinch feature*

- If someone or an object is caught by the window when it is rolling up, the window stops and rolls down automatically.

Anti-pinch initialization

- Pull the switch to close the window, then release immediately. Repeat the first step and hold the switch for at least 400 ms.

WARNING

- Never try to deliberately activate the anti-pinch function.
- Follow the precautions below to prevent serious injuries or death from window closing:
  - Before operating the power windows, ensure that all passengers do not have any body parts that can be caught in the window.
  - Do not allow a child to operate the power windows.

CAUTION

- Excessively frequent activation of the anti-pinch function can activate the regulator motor's overheat protection.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is jammed into the window when it is almost completely closed.
- If the low-voltage battery is disconnected while a window is being rolled up or down, the automatic rolling-up and anti-pinch functions both cease to work.

CAUTION

- Contacting a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance is recommended if the windows' automatic closing function or anti-pinch function is not working normally.

Delay function*

- After the vehicle is powered off, if the front doors are not open, the four-door window controller has a roll-up/down delay period of 10 minutes. During this period, the windows can still be rolled up and down. If either of the front doors is opened during this period, the delay function is canceled, and the switches can no longer be used to operate the windows.

WARNING

- Before closing a power window, ensure occupants' hands are not placed upon the window glass; pinching of hands or fingers can result in serious injuries.

Window Lock Button*

- Pressing this button deactivates the window switches on the rear row. The window switches on the sides of the driver and the front passenger remain operational.
- Press the switch a second time. The indicator goes out, and the window switches on the rear row work normally.



Central Locking

The driver's door is equipped with power door switches. Both switches can lock or unlock all doors.

① **Unlocking**

Press the central unlock button. All doors are unlocked and the red lock indicator turns off.

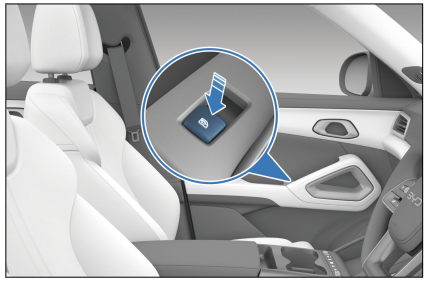
② **Locking**

Press the central lock button. All doors are locked and the red lock indicator lights up.



Window Control Switch on Passenger's Side

When the ignition is on, use the front passenger and rear door window switches to operate the respective windows.



Hazard Warning Light Switch

When the ⚠ button is pressed, all turn signals and turn signal indicators on the instrument cluster start flashing. They all stop flashing when the ⚠ button is pressed again.



⚠ CAUTION

- The hazard warning lights are used to alert drivers and pedestrians of possible risks of dangerous accidents.

Panoramic Glass Roof*

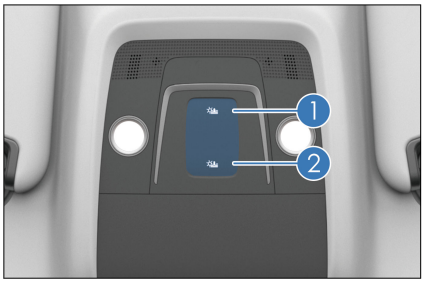
Opening/Closing the Sunshade*

Opening the sunshade

- Press and hold the sunshade open button ① to open the sunshade

manually. Release the button midway to stop the sunshade.

- Release the sunshade open button ① immediately after touching it. The sunshade opens automatically. For the sunshade to stop at its current position, touch the ① or ② button midway.



Closing the sunshade

- Press and hold the sunshade close button ② to close the sunshade. Release the button midway to stop the sunshade at its current position.
- If the sunshade has been initialized, releasing the button ② immediately after touching it closes the sunshade automatically. For the sunshade to stop at its current position, press button ① or ② midway.

CAUTION

- When opening or closing the sunroof sunshade, avoid forceful contact with its curtain to prevent damage.

Initialization

- With the ignition on, try the following steps for initialization:
  - Press the close button to the fully closed position and hold on for at least 0.5 seconds to initialize the sunshade.
  - If the sunshade does not close fully, calibrate manually. Press and hold the sunroof/sunshade close button, and release it when the sunroof/sunshade stops moving. Hold the button again for at least seven seconds, and release it until the sunroof/sunshade is fully closed and a click sound is heard.

Interior Light Switches

Front Interior Lights

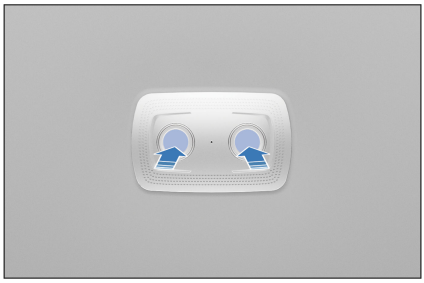
- Touch the interior lights to turn on or off the corresponding lights.



- To enable or disable "Auto Interior Lights", swipe down from the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen to access the shortcut screen.
- When the vehicle is not powered off, "Auto Interior Lights" is enabled, opening any door and touching the interior light will switch the brightness between high and low levels instead of turning the light off.
- When the vehicle is powered off and "Auto Interior Lights" is enabled, the interior lights will automatically turn off after the door has been open for a period of time. Any other operations during this period restart the timer.

Rear Interior Lights*

- Touch the rear interior light to turn the light on. Touch again to turn it off.



Rear side interior lights*

- Touch the rear side interior light to turn the light on. Touch again to turn it off.



04 USING AND DRIVING

Charging/Discharging..... 80
Batteries.....94
Usage Precautions.....97
Starting and Driving.....107
Driver Assistance..... 120

Charging/ Discharging

Charging Instructions

Charging Safety Warnings

- The charging connector uses high-voltage current. Minors are prohibited to charge the vehicle or touch the charging equipment. Keep them away from the vehicle during charging.
- Charge the vehicle in a safe environment, and avoid charging in thunderstorms, or areas with hazardous liquids, fire or heat sources, or flammable or explosive items.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock and personal injury, never operate the equipment with wet hands or touch the exposed metal of the charge port or charge base.
- Charging may affect medical electronic devices and even cause serious personal injury or death. If you use any medical electronic device (such as implantable pacemaker or implantable cardiovascular defibrillator), confirm before charging with the device manufacturer whether normal operation of the device will be affected.

Warnings for charging equipment

- Use EV charging equipment that complies with local standards.
  - To avoid charging failure or fire, do not modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and related ports. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider if there is a fault.
  - Ensure the quality of charging equipment.
- Never use the charging equipment if the household power strip cable becomes soft, if the charging connector cable is worn out, if the insulation layer is cracked, or in case of any other damage.
- Never use the equipment if the charging connector, power plug, or power strip is disconnected or broken, or if there is any sign of surface damage.
- Charging equipment grounding instructions:
  - The equipment must be properly grounded. In the event of failure of or damage to the equipment, the grounding cable provides a minimum impedance to circuit discharge, reducing the risk of electric shock.
  - The equipment comes with a ground cable connecting its ground point with that of the power plug, which must match a properly installed and well-grounded power supply outlet.
- When charging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires.

Pre-charging warnings

- Ensure that there is no water or foreign materials in the charge ports of the vehicle, power supply equipment, and charging equipment, nor damage or bad effect caused by metal terminal rust or corrosion. In the event of any of these situations, do not charge.

Warnings during charging

- To prevent serious personal injury, pay attention to the following precautions during charging:
  - Do not touch the metal connection of the charge port, charging connector, or plug.

- Do not charge or touch the vehicle in a thunderstorm. Lightning strikes may cause damage to the charging equipment or personal injuries.
- If anything abnormal is found in the vehicle or charging equipment during charging, such as peculiar smell or smoke, stop immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Do not carry out maintenance work during charging.

Post-charging warnings

- Always unplug the charging and discharging equipment and close the charge port door before driving.

Compatibility of vehicle and charging infrastructure*

- Compatibility signs are located on the vehicle's charging socket, the local charging infrastructure (charging stations and sockets), and on the charging cable.



- The signs refer to standardized charging systems in accordance with DIN EN 62196.

Charging Precautions

- Although AC charging can be carried out in any power mode, it is safer to power off the vehicle before charging. The vehicle cannot be powered on during charging.
- If power supply resumes after short-time outage of the external power grid, BYD charging equipment will re-start charging automatically and no re-connection of the charging equipment is required.
- If you need to stop charging before the battery is fully charged, try to set early stop for the charger first instead of directly unplugging the charger.
- When the vehicle is not used for an extended period, it is recommended to charge it once a month at least.

Precautions for charging equipment

- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle:
  - Before starting the vehicle, check that the charging equipment is disconnected. When the charging connector is loosely inserted, you may still be able to power on the vehicle and drive it. Driving with charging equipment connected will damage the equipment and the vehicle.
  - Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is open.
  - To prevent failure of the charge port door, do not open and close it repeatedly. The recommended time interval for opening and closing the port door is at least one second.
  - If the charge port door and charging connector are frozen due to weather or other reasons, do not forcibly open the charge port door or pull out the charging connector.

- To prevent damage to the vehicle and the charge port, do not shake the charging connector during charging.
- Do not force the charging connector in or out while the charge port is locked.

- Take caution when using the equipment.
  - The charging cable has a limited reach. Do not pull or twist the charging cable with force.
  - Prevent any mechanical impact, such as fall and collide, on the charging/discharging equipment. Take caution when moving the equipment.
  - Do not store or use the charging equipment at a temperature above 50°C.
  - Do not place the charging equipment near heaters or other heating sources.
- It is not recommended to use any additional wire or adapter/connector. If an additional adapter is required, choose a suitable cable diameter ($\geqslant$1.5 mm^2) and the adapter/connector specifications must meet requirements.

Before charging

- Do not force the charge port door open when it is locked.
- Make sure that the charging connector and the charge port are free of foreign objects, and that the protective cap of the charging connector terminal does not get loose or deformed.
- Unlock and open the charge port door. Hold the charging connector, align the connector with the charge port and push it in, making sure that they are properly connected.

During charging

- It is recommended that no one stay in the vehicle during charging.
- The A/C can be used as normal while the vehicle is being charged. However, the charging power may be reduced.
- It is recommended to park the vehicle in a ventilated area. Make sure that the air intake grille is not blocked.
- It is normal that the charging power displayed on the instrument cluster may fluctuate temporarily as the battery temperature control system is working during charging.
- Battery cooling may start, and the compressor, fan and other components work when necessary. It is normal that there will be some noise under the hood.
- Before charging is complete, battery equalization is activated for longer battery life and thus the charging time may be longer.
- The charging cable must not be placed in a spiral during charging, as this will affect heat dissipation.
- In the case of low-temperature charging, the temperature control system can improve the battery's low-temperature charging capacity, but the charging time is prolonged and the heating power consumption is increased. This is normal.
  - In low-temperature regions, it is recommended to charge the vehicle in a heated indoor space.
  - In high-temperature regions, charging in a cool and ventilated place is recommended.
- The estimated time until full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster and may vary slightly across temperatures, SOC, and charging facilities.

After charging

- Stop charging first and make sure the charge port is unlocked.
- Hold the charging connector with one hand and remove the connector by pressing and holding its button*.
- After charging, unlock it first and then pull out the charging connector.
- Do not force the charging connector out while the charge port is locked, otherwise the charge port may be damaged.
- After unplugging the charging connector, make sure that the charge port's cap and door are closed, otherwise water or foreign materials may enter the port and affect its normal use.

Recommendations for improving the driving experience:

- When the state of charge (SOC) bar on the instrument cluster turns red, the high-voltage battery is about to be exhausted. Please charge it immediately, otherwise the service life of the high-voltage battery will be reduced.
- It is recommended to charge the vehicle immediately after using it for better charging performance.

General Charging Troubleshooting

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
Charger is connected and charge starts, but battery cannot be charged.	Charging card has insufficient balance or the charging station is malfunctioning.	Check the card balance or contact the charging station staff.
	The AC charging connector is not properly plugged in.	Ensure the charger switch has come up. Check cable length and connection correctness.
	The low-voltage battery over-discharges.	Connect the vehicle to another 12V low-voltage battery to charge its own low-voltage battery after the vehicle is powered on.
	The local standard grounded socket has no power supply.	Check whether the power supply is under overload protection and use other sockets.
	The vehicle or AC charging connector fails.	Stop charging and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider if power system fault warning light or charging system fault message is found on the instrument cluster.
	The high-voltage battery temperature is too low or too high.	Warm up or cool down the high-voltage battery. Keep the vehicle in an environment with appropriate temperature and charge it when the temperature becomes normal.

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
	The high-voltage battery has been fully charged.	When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the charging will stop automatically.
Charging stops midway.	Charging cable is not connected properly.	Verify if the charging cable is loosely connected.
	The power is off.	After the power is restored in a period of time, the charging connection should be connected again to start charging.
	The button* on the charging connector is pressed.	If the button* on the charging connector is pressed, charging will stop. Connect again to start charging.
	The high-voltage battery temperature is too high.	Charging will automatically stop. Charge the vehicle when the battery cools down.
	Vehicle or charging pile fails.	If there is any fault prompt for the charging pile or the vehicle, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Charging

- Check before charging:
  - Ensure that the power supply equipment, the charging connector, the charge port, and the charging connection device are free of defects, such as cable wear, rusted ports, cracked casings, or foreign objects in the ports.
  - Make sure the plug of the charging connector or port, the socket, or metal terminals are not loose or damaged by rust or corrosion.
  - When the charging connector, the port, the power plug, or the socket is visibly stained or damp, wipe them with a dry and clean cloth to ensure the connection is dry and clean.
- In any of these cases, do not charge. Otherwise, personal injuries may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
  - Protect the charging equipment against water contact on rainy days.

Using Mode 2 Charging Cable

Before mode 2 charging

- To prevent serious personal injury, carefully read warnings on ***P80***.
- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, carefully read ***P81*** in "Charging Instructions".

Equipment

- This Mode 2 charging cable* includes a power plug (complying with local standards), a charging connector, a control box, and a charging cable. The plug should be connected to a standard household power socket, and the charging connector to the vehicle's charge port.
- A household socket meeting local standards must be used in order to avoid line damage or tripping due to

high-power charging, which may affect the normal use of other devices.

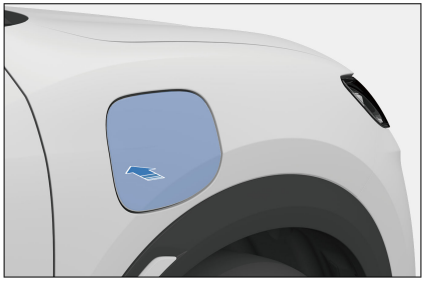
- Connect the vehicle to an outlet that meets local standards to charge the vehicle.
- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

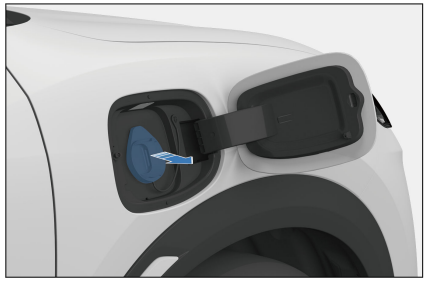
- It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider or local electrician to select an appropriate power supply according to requirements of the charging equipment.
- When using mode 2 charging cable, activate the immobilizer system of the charge port.

Charging

1. Open the charge port door:
   - With the vehicle doors unlocked and preferably powered off, press the charge port door to open it.



2. Open the AC charge port cap:
   - Open the charge port cap, and make sure that no obstacles exist between the head of the charging connector and the end of the charging socket.



3. Connect to the power supply terminal:
   - Plug the Mode 2 charging cable* into a household socket.
4. Connect to the vehicle port:
   - Plug the charging connector correctly into the port.
   - After the charging connector is inserted, the charging connection indicator on the instrument cluster or infotainment touchscreen lights up.

REMINDER

- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays charging parameters and the charging sign.
  - You can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See ***P87*** for details.
- Scheduled charging cannot be used when the battery is too low.

Stopping charging

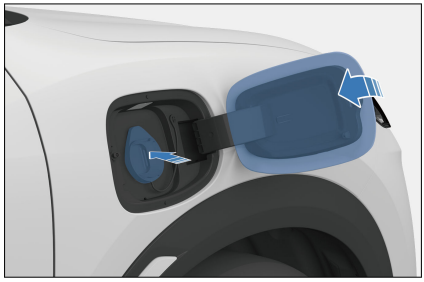
1. End charging:
   - The charging automatically ends when the vehicle is fully charged.
   - To end the charging early, proceed to the next step.
2. Unplug the charging connector:

- If the immobilizer system is disabled, you can pull out the charging connector directly.
- If the immobilizer is activated, press the unlock button on the key or press the door handle microswitch with the key nearby, and then pull out the charging connector.

REMINDER

- To unlock the vehicle, press the unlock button on the key (when charging the vehicle with ignition switched off) or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby).
- When the immobilizer system is activated, unlock the vehicle to release the charge port immobilizer before pulling out the charging connector. The connector has to be pulled out promptly, or the port will re-lock. You can activate or deactivate the immobilizer on the infotainment touchscreen, see ***P92*** for details.
- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking (see ***P93*** in "Charging Port Immobilizer System" for details).
- If you cannot pull the charging connector out directly when the charge port's immobilizer system is deactivated, try to unlock the vehicle and pull it again.

3. Disconnect the power plug.
4. Close the charge port cap and the port door.
5. Store the charging equipment properly.



REMINDER

- Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is fully open.

Using AC Charging Piles*

Before using AC charging piles:

- To prevent serious personal injury, carefully read warnings on ***P80***.
- To prevent damage to charging equipment and the vehicle, carefully read precautions on ***P81***.

Equipment

- AC charging box*:
  - consists of a charging box, a charging connector, and a connecting cable. For information on circuit breaker and emergency stop switch, see the charging box user manual.
  - Use a standard-compliant household charging box. For how to use the charging equipment, refer to its user manual and follow the operating steps.
- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.
- Single-phase AC charging pile*
  - Charge the vehicle using a public single-phase AC charging pile. Since some charging piles are not

equipped with charging connectors, AC charging connectors need to be prepared.

- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

Charging

1. Unlock the vehicle, then open the charge port door and cap:
   - See ***P84*** to unlock the charge port door, open the port door and the AC charge port cap.
2. Connect to the power supply terminal:
   - Skip this step for AC charging piles equipped with charging connectors.
   - Use a self-prepared AC charging connector to connect your vehicle to the single-phase AC charging pile with no charging connector.
3. Connect to the vehicle port:
   - Plug the charging connector into the port and make sure it is tight.
4. Charging settings:
   - Skip this step if a public AC charging pile without any setting option is used.
   - For public single-phase AC charging pile with settings, swipe the card or scan the QR code. See the user manual for charging pile details.
5. The charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.

REMINDER

- At this point, you can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See ***P87*** for the configuration process.

Stopping charging

1. End charging:
   - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or charging is complete.
2. Unplug the charging connector:
   - Disconnect as per the instructions in Using Mode 2 Charging Cable.
3. Disconnect the power plug.
   - If Mode 2 charging cable is used, it is recommended to unplug the charging connector from the vehicle first and then the plug from the charging point.
   - Skip this step for AC charging piles equipped with charging connectors.
4. Close the AC charge port door (see instructions for Mode 2 charging).
5. Store the equipment properly.
   - Place the charging connector in its designated location in the charging pile.

Smart Charging

The charging mode can be set on the infotainment system. To access or exit the setting:

- On the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging** → **Smart Charging** to access the scheduled charging setting screen.

- To exit the scheduled charging screen, tap ⮌ or ⌂.

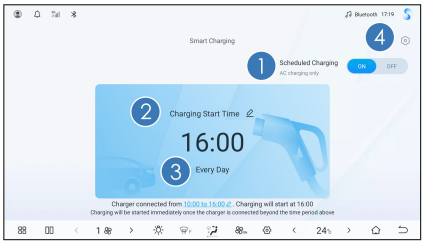
Setting screen

① Scheduled charging switch

② Charging start time

③ Repeat cycle

④ Settings



- The factory default setting is to charge the vehicle immediately. That is, scheduled charging is disabled.
- To schedule a charging, toggle the scheduled charging ON ①, set the charging start time ② and repeat cycle ③, then save the settings.
- After the schedule is set up successfully, if you connect the charging connector or press the power button to power off the vehicle during the charge waiting period, you will be reminded through the infotainment touchscreen that scheduled charging has been set. Switch to instant charging if needed.
- You can tap the scheduled charging setting icon ④ to turn off the charging connector connected alert and power-off alert in the Scheduled Charging Alert.

CAUTION

- The scheduled charging function is developed for BYD's AC slow charging equipment only. Disable this function when using non-BYD-certified AC charging equipment. Otherwise, scheduled or immediate charging may fail due to no response from the equipment, resulting in low SOC or even battery depletion.

REMINDER

- The "charge now" option on the reminder screen is valid for the current schedule only. To cancel all schedules, toggle scheduled charging off on the corresponding screen.
- Scheduled charging is dedicated for BYD AC charging piles. If you need to use this function in a public charging facility, make sure it supports scheduling from the vehicle system.
- When the battery level is low, the vehicle is charged to a certain level before scheduled charging begins. During this process, the infotainment system displays reminders for power-off and charging connector connection, and a corresponding message is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- The vehicle's power consumption may increase during the scheduled charging standby period. Prolonged standby may result in a reduction of the vehicle's state of charge (SOC) and driving range. This is considered a normal condition.

Discharging Instructions*

- This vehicle is equipped with the vehicle-to-load (V2L)* feature.

Equipment description*

- V2L discharge connection equipment*: consists of a discharge connector, a power strip, a cable, and a discharge connector protective cover.
- The equipment used must comply with local standards. See the equipment that came with your vehicle for details.

WARNING

- Do not touch any metal terminal of the discharging socket or the vehicle charge port during discharging.
- Stop discharging immediately if there are any abnormalities such as peculiar smell and smoke.
- See Charging Instructions for discharging safety warnings.
- Store the V2L discharge connection equipment in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When discharging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires to prevent it from falling and being rolled over by the vehicle and trampled on.
- Never use the equipment if the power strip cable becomes soft, if the charging connector cable is worn out, if the insulation layer is cracked, or if any other damage occurs.
- Never use the equipment when the discharging connector or power strip is disconnected or

WARNING

broken, or when there is any sign of surface damage.

- The engine starts when the vehicle is discharged to a low SOC. Do not discharge in a confined space or near combustible or explosive materials.

CAUTION

- For precautions concerning use of the discharge connection device, refer to the charging equipment precautions in Charging Precautions.
- Before V2L discharging, ensure that the load is turned off.

REMINDER

- Before discharging, confirm the vehicle SOC and estimate the remaining driving range. This function is recommended when the vehicle has a higher SOC.
- When the vehicle is powered off, the static power consumption of the vehicle will increase if the discharging connection device is connected for an extended period without any output. Therefore, removing the discharging connector when the device is not used is recommended.
- BYD's original discharging connection device is required, and the vehicle discharging function may not work properly with non-BYD products.

Discharging

Check before discharging

- Discharging safety warnings are as those given in "Charging Safety Warnings". Carefully read and observe these warnings to prevent serious personal injury.
- Discharging precautions are as those given in "Charging Precautions". Carefully read and observe these precautions to prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle.
- Ensure that the vehicle SOC is at least 15%.
- In any of the cases below, do not discharge. Otherwise, personal injuries may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
  - There are abnormalities of the V2L discharge connection equipment, such as cracked housing, worn cable, rusted plug, or foreign materials.
  - There is water or foreign material inside the charge port, or the metal terminals are damaged by rust, corrosion, and other abnormalities.

Starting discharging

1. Open the charge port door and port cap:
   - Before discharging, disarm the anti-theft alarm system.
   - Unlock the charge port door and open the port door and cap (see ***P90***).
2. Connect the discharge equipment:
   - Firmly connect the discharge connection equipment to the charge port.
3. Start discharging:
   - After the switch button* on the discharging socket is pressed, the socket indicator stays on (red), indicating that the socket can be used.
   - After the equipment is connected, discharging will begin and related information will be displayed on the instrument cluster.

Stopping discharging

1. End discharging:
   - Disconnect the load.
   - In an emergency, proceed directly to the next step (which is not recommended).
2. Disconnect the discharge connection equipment:
   - With doors unlocked, unplug the connector from the charge port. For discharging connectors with a mechanical button, press the button before unplugging.
   - Close the charge port cap and the port door (see ***P90***).
3. Organize the equipment:
   - Store the equipment properly when discharging is complete.

Setting discharging duration

- After the discharge connector is plugged in, V2L discharging will be automatically toggled on and a countdown to discharging will be displayed on the instrument cluster and infotainment touchscreen. The default duration of a discharge set on the infotainment touchscreen is five hours.
- On the infotainment touchscreen, tap ⚙ → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging** → **Vehicle To Load** to access the setting screen.

- After the vehicle is connected to the discharging connector, toggle **Vehicle To Load** on or off.
- When the vehicle is discharged to a low SOC, tap the "Start the engine to generate electricity when the power is too low" switch if it is necessary to start the engine to continue discharging.
- Tap the Settings button for single discharge to set the desired discharge duration on the corresponding screen.

CAUTION

- Discharging cannot be toggled on without connecting the connector. In that case, when tapped, the Vehicle To Load button will be grayed out after a while, which is a normal phenomenon.
- Discharging may stop in advance if the vehicle battery is too low, if battery is lower and no gasoline is available to generate electricity, or if the set discharging time is too long. This is a normal phenomenon.

Target SOC Setting*

- When the vehicle runs in dual-mode condition, the target SOC function is available to save battery power for operations such as rapid acceleration. When the vehicle runs stably, the battery SOC fluctuates around the target SOC.
- The vehicle controller will memorize the last set target SOC.

REMINDER

- When the engine has been started and the vehicle is running at a stable speed, part of the torque produced by the engine will drive the generator to generate electricity and charge the high-voltage battery.
- If the difference between the current SOC and the SOC balance value is large, the balancing time may be long.

Target SOC settings

Target SOC refers to the battery level that you expect the vehicle to maintain during driving. To set this value, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Energy Manager**.

- SAVE mode prioritizes battery power saving, keeping battery power not below the target set as far as possible. If the destination is convenient for vehicle charging, lowering the target SOC help make the best use of the electric driving power and reduce fuel consumption. Otherwise, a higher target SOC is recommended to improve the driving experience.
- When the SAVE mode is off, fuel economy is prioritized, although battery power keeping is considered.

CAUTION

- SAVE mode works in HEV mode only, so it does not respond if turned on in EV mode. For a better driving experience, it is better to switch to HEV mode before turning SAVE mode on.

In-Situ Power Generation

During parking, if the SOC is lower than a certain level, the engine drives the generator to charge the high-voltage battery. Therefore, engine running faster than when idle is normal. Power generation stops when the SOC reaches above a certain level.

Mode Memory

- When the vehicle SOC is high, the vehicle will automatically switch to EV mode when it is powered on. EV mode is recommended to be given priority to.
- When the vehicle SOC is moderate, the vehicle defaults to the previous dynamic mode when it is powered on. After power-on, you can manually select the mode with the mode switch.

Power Generation by Pressing the Accelerator Pedal

- When the vehicle is in Park and HEV mode, pressing the accelerator pedal while the SOC is below a certain level can trigger the regeneration function.

REMINDER

- It is recommended not to keep using this feature for a long time.
- In special working conditions, such as low or high temperatures, the wattage of power generated is influenced by the charging wattage or the motor generating capacity, causing the value displayed on the instrument cluster to fluctuate.

Charging Port Immobilizer System

- In order to prevent the charging connector from being stolen, the vehicle charge port is anti-theft with the charging port immobilizer system. The charging port immobilizer system is disabled by default. To enable it, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging**.
- When the immobilizer is in Enable or Intelligent mode, unlock the vehicle and unplug the charging connector during charging in the following ways:
  - With the ignition off, press the unlock button on the smart key to unlock.
  - Press the microswitch next to the exterior handle of the driver's side door to unlock (with the smart key nearby).
  - Press the central unlock button on the driver's door to unlock.
  - The charging connector unlocks automatically when the vehicle is fully charged (for "intelligent" mode only).

No.	Charging Port Immobilizer System Status	Door Anti-theft Lock Status	Vehicle Fully Charged or Not	Charging Connector Removable or Not
1	Enabled	Locked	/	No

No.	Charging Port Immobilizer System Status	Door Anti-theft Lock Status	Vehicle Fully Charged or Not	Charging Connector Removable or Not
2	Enabled	Enabled	/	Yes
3	Disabled	Locking	/	Yes
4	Disabled	Enabled	/	Yes
5	Intelligent	Locking	The vehicle is fully charged	Yes
			The vehicle is not fully charged	No
6	Intelligent	Enabled	/	Yes

- As shown in the table above, if the vehicle is in state 2/3/4/6, apart from the above-mentioned unlocking operations, you can unlock and pull out the charging connector by pressing its button. However, this may affect the service life of the charge port or charging connector. This is an emergency action that is not recommended to be taken frequently.

CAUTION

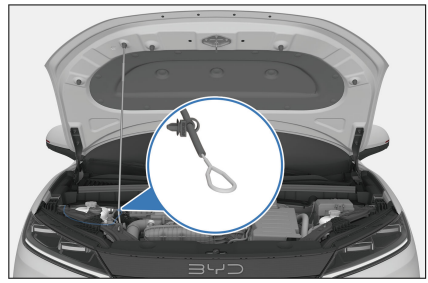
- After the charging connector is unlocked, it has to be pulled out promptly, or the port will re-lock after a while.
- After the locked vehicle is fully charged, the charging connector will be automatically unlocked when the charge port immobilizer system is in Disabled or Intelligent mode. When in Enabled mode, the charging connector must be manually unlocked following the above steps.
- To ensure the normal driving after charging, close the charge port

CAUTION

door after pulling out the charging connector.

Emergency Unlocking of Charge Port

- When the charging connector cannot be unplugged due to failure of the immobilizer system, unlock the charge port manually and unplug the charging connector.
- Open the hood. A lock latch can be found inside. Pull the latch to unlock the charging connector.
- Put the cap back after the connector is pulled out.



CAUTION

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Driving Range Display*

- The driving range display mode can be adjusted according to your preference. The default setting is standard mode.
- You can change the mode on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Audio & Display** → **Instrument**.
  - Standard mode: displays the driving range based on the result of comprehensive working condition test.
  - Dynamic mode: displays the estimated driving range based on the available battery power and current average energy consumption.
- The set driving range display mode is memorized by the system.
  - When the vehicle is powered off and then on, the display mode set last time will be maintained.

REMINDER

- When the Dynamic driving range display mode is set:
  - The driving range that is displayed after a full charge may vary, depending on calculations of the energy consumed the last time the vehicle is used.
  - The driving range actually displayed will be adjusted based on the state of the vehicle's air conditioner, the driving mode (ECO, NORMAL, SPORT, etc.)

REMINDER

selected, and the driver's driving habits, so as to match the vehicle's actual driving range.

Batteries

High-Voltage Battery

- One of the main power sources of the vehicle is high-voltage battery, which is located under the vehicle floor and can be charged repeatedly. The main ways to charge the high-voltage battery through an external power supply are: using Mode 2 charging cable, using AC charging piles, and using motor when the vehicle is braking, coasting, or the engine is on.

WARNING

- Do not disassemble, move, or alter high-voltage battery components and connecting cables as their connectors can cause serious burns or electric shock and may result in personal injuries or death. The orange cables are part of high-voltage wiring harness. Users must not repair the vehicle's high-voltage system by themselves. If any repair is required, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- If the high-voltage battery is damaged, there may be a delayed fire risk. In this case, the vehicle or the damaged battery should be placed under surveillance in a dedicated and secure storage area to prevent a fire from occurring.

CAUTION

- As the high-voltage battery is arranged at the bottom of the vehicle, careful driving is recommended in case of bumpy roads.

REMINDER

- When the ignition is switched on, the high-voltage lines will be connected.
- For new cars with normal high-voltage battery status, the pure electric mileage will change due to different driving habits, road conditions, temperatures, and whether the electrical equipment is turned on or off.
- To prolong the battery life and ensure the battery safety, the vehicle switches to trickle charging mode at high SOC, and the charging time may be prolonged.
- Due to the chemical characteristics of the battery itself, the battery capacity of vehicles that have been used for a period of time has natural degradation, and their pure electric mileage will reduce. When you find that the pure electric mileage of your vehicle has decreased, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for check. The store-side inspection can confirm whether the reduction of pure electric mileage is normal.

High-Voltage Battery Maintenance

- For optimal battery performance, use a charging connector to fully charge the battery regularly, and the recommended frequency is once a week at least.
- If the vehicle is to be left sit for over seven days, it is recommended to keep the SOC between 40% and 60% to extend vehicle service life. If this period will be over three months, charge the vehicle fully and discharge it down to 40% to 60% SOC, to avoid battery degradation or even damage.

Low-Temperature Heating for High-Voltage Battery

- In a low-temperature environment, the high-voltage battery heating system starts up and heats the battery to speed up the low-temperature charging and ensure the power performance and driving range of the vehicle.

WARNING

- Non-professionals must not open the high-voltage battery pack. Do not disassemble or dismantle the low-voltage battery. Any organization or individual to do so shall bear the responsibility for environmental pollution or accidents.

CAUTION

- If the high-voltage battery fails, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- It is recommended to use the vehicle at temperatures between -20°C to 40°C. Higher or lower operating temperatures of the

REMINDER

high-voltage battery may prolong the charging time.

- To ensure long term performance, avoid continuously exposing the vehicle to high temperatures or extreme cold environment for over 24 hours.

Recycling the High-Voltage Battery

How to scrap an NEV:

1. Take the vehicle to the BYD recycling service provider that will assess the residual value of the high-voltage battery.
2. Take the assessed vehicle to the recycling organization to disassemble the high-voltage battery.
3. Take the battery to the recycling service provider which will buy back the battery.

WARNING

- New energy car owners have the responsibility and obligation to hand over waste high-voltage batteries to the recycling service outlet. Anyone who hands over a used high-voltage battery to any other organization or individual, or removes/disassembles a high-voltage battery without authorization, shall be liable for any environmental pollution or safety incident so caused.

Low-Voltage Battery

- The vehicle's low-voltage battery features the intelligent charging function. When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the vehicle can automatically initiate the high-voltage battery to charge the low-voltage battery, extending its lifespan.

REMINDER

- It is normal that intelligent charging with the ignition "OFF" produces a sound which is usually heard when the ignition is switched on.
- When leaving the vehicle, make sure all electrical equipment is turned off and the doors are closed.

Waking up the Vehicle from Low SOC

Wake-up by the driver's door microswitch*

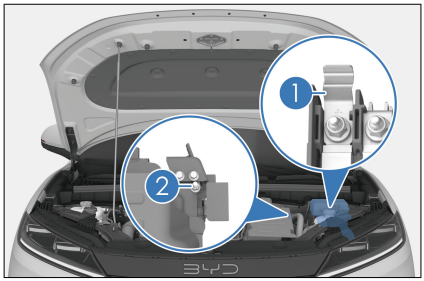
- The low-voltage battery features the dormancy wakeup. After long-term parking, if vehicle finding or unlocking cannot be performed with the smart key, it indicates that the low-voltage battery may have entered a dormant state.
- In this case, press and hold the microswitch on the driver's door handle (while carrying the smart key) to wake up the battery and unlock the vehicle.

REMINDER

- If the low-voltage battery is extremely low, the instrument cluster may display corresponding messages and the vehicle may goes dormant again. Power on the vehicle immediately to charge the low-voltage battery. It is recommended to charge it for more than one hour.

Wake-up by jump start

- When the vehicle cannot be woken up and unlocked using the driver's door microswitch, use the mechanical key to open the door. Then, use an external 12 V power supply and two dedicated jump-start cables to start the vehicle.
- Jump starting can only be performed through the dedicated interface of the under-hood PDB. The connection terminals are shown in the illustration.
  - Positive terminal on the front hood PDB①
  - Negative terminal on ECU housing②



- If the vehicle cannot be woken up and started by the above steps, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

WARNING

- Never jump start another vehicle with this vehicle, because this may damage your low-voltage battery.
- Before jump starting, check the battery conditions. Do not jump start the vehicle with freezing electrolyte.
- Make sure the environment is well-ventilated and free from any fire sources.
- The low-voltage battery contains an intelligent control module.

WARNING

To prevent battery damage, do not disassemble or damage this battery without permission, except in an emergency.

- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery before performing parts replacement and vehicle repairs.

CAUTION

- It is recommended that jump starting be performed under professional guidance due to the limited operating space and electrical risks in the under-hood PDB area.
- Use a 12–14.2 V jump-starting power supply and limit each jump-starting attempt to one minute, or the low-voltage battery may be damaged.
- Do not clean the low-voltage battery with liquids, and take caution to prevent liquid ingress.

Usage Precautions

Break-in Period

- If the powertrain is hard to start or frequently stops turning, inspect the vehicle immediately.
- If the powertrain makes any abnormal sounds, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- If the powertrain has severe coolant and oil leakage, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- The powertrain needs break-in. It is recommended that this be done within

the first 2,000 km in HEV-ECO mode by smooth driving, instead of high-speed driving. The following practices can effectively prolong vehicle service life:

- Avoid flooring the accelerator pedal when starting and driving the vehicle.
- Avoid speeding.
- Avoid emergency braking within the first 300 km.
- Do not maintain a high or low speed for too long.
- During the break-in period, the proportion of HEV mode (with the engine involved in working) must not be less than 50% of the driving mileage.

Trailer Towing*

- The vehicle can tow a trailer only when equipped with towing function.
- Do not use the vehicle to tow other vehicles within the first 2,000 km of mileage.
- Do not make non-approved modifications. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to install the towing kit and related software updates. BYD does not assume any responsibility for injuries or damage caused by non-approved modifications.

The towing capacity depends on various factors such as vehicle specifications, loads, road conditions, and trailer specifications. The total towing weight must not exceed the limits below:

Item	Parameter	Note
Maximum towing capacity	750 kg	Maximum total towing capacity allowed
Maximum vertical load	75 kg	Maximum vertical load on ball joint

- To tow a trailer, adjust the tire pressure to accommodate additional loads. Keep front tires inflated to 250 kPa and rear tires to 270 kPa.
- Observe applicable local laws and regulations regarding towing. For driving safety, avoid speeding and overloading.
- For towing, the technically permissible maximum mass on the rear axle may be exceeded by no more than 15% and the technically permissible laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by no more than 100 kg. In such cases, the vehicle speed must not exceed 100 km/h, and the rear tire pressure must be at least 20 kPa above the pressure recommended for normal driving conditions.
- Towing other vehicles will have an adverse impact on the vehicle, including maneuverability, performance, braking, endurance, economic driving or power consumption.
- BYD does not assume any responsibility for damage or injuries resulting from towing a trailer due to failure to comply with trailer towing guidelines. Damage caused by towing a trailer is not covered by the warranty.

- For detailed towing instructions, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The tow bar is for towing trailers only. Do not use it to get unstuck or tow trapped vehicles to prevent vehicle damage and even personal injuries.

Driving Safety Precautions

No Drunk Driving

Even a small amount of alcohol can reduce a driver's ability to respond to traffic condition changes. The higher the level of alcohol, the less responsive the driver will be. Therefore, never drive while under the influence.

No Speeding

Speeding is a major cause of fatal accidents. Faster speeds generally entail higher risk. Therefore, maintain a speed safe for the road traffic conditions.

Keeping the Vehicle Safe for Driving

Tire bursts and mechanical faults are extremely dangerous. To reduce the possibility of such faults, frequently check the vehicle's condition, and regularly complete the specified inspections.

CAUTION

- Any driver must possess a driver's license before driving a vehicle.
- Do not drive when fatigued.
- Always follow the traffic regulations when driving a vehicle.

CAUTION

- During driving, please focus on driving, and avoid activity unrelated to driving (such as making / receiving phone calls and adjusting buttons).

Vehicle Use Suggestions

Suggestions for prolong the battery usage:

- When the vehicle is not to be operated for an extended period (over seven days), it is recommended that the battery SOC should be kept at 40%-60%, or it will reduce high-voltage battery service life.
- When the vehicle is not to be operated for over three months, the high-voltage battery must be fully charged and then discharged to 40%-60%. Otherwise, over-discharge may lead to battery performance degradation or even damage. Any vehicle fault or damage so caused will not be warranted.
- During operation of the vehicle, if the instrument cluster displays the driving mileage as 0, it indicates the battery SOC is low. In this case, charge the high-voltage battery in time and avoid operating the vehicle with low SOC for a long time.
- For optimal battery performance, use a charging connector to fully charge the battery regularly, and the recommended frequency is once a week at least.
- To maintain long-term performance, avoid continuously exposing the vehicle to an environment with a temperature above 60°C or below -30°C for over 24 hours.
- If the tray dented inward or there is scarification under the battery package

tray, it is suggested to check at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- During operation of the vehicle, avoid repeated rapid acceleration or deceleration whenever possible.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid operating the vehicle continuously for a long time whenever possible; otherwise, the excessively high battery temperature will affect vehicle performance.
- If the instrument cluster mulfunctions when driving, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- When the high-voltage battery temperature is high, the vehicle performance will be limited to some extent. In this case, stop the vehicle and wait until the temperature drops before operating.

REMINDER

- If the meter drops to 0, the battery must be recharged. If it is not recharged within 7 days, the battery may suffer permanent damage. Such damage is not covered by BYD warranty terms.
- Driving range depends on many factors, such as the vehicle's available power, vehicle age (current battery life), weather, temperature, road conditions and driving habits. Compared with under normal temperatures, the driving range is somewhat reduced and power performance will also be affected in low or high temperature environments.

Fuel

Fuel Selection

- The use of correct fuel is the basis for realizing the best performance of the engine, and also the key to controlling emissions and protecting relevant components.
- Please use unleaded gasoline as per your local standards.

CAUTION

- Do not use leaded gasoline. The use of leaded gasoline leads to the failure of the three-way catalytic converter and the malfunction of the control device for exhaust pollution, as well as the increase in maintenance costs.
- The engine damage or excessive emission caused by the use of improper fuel is not covered by the warranty.
- The use of low-grade or inferior gasoline reduces the service life of the engine.

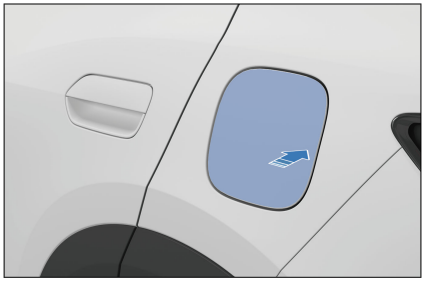
Refueling

- The fuel door is located on the left side of the vehicle. Park with the left side close to the fuel pump.
- Turn off the vehicle before refueling.

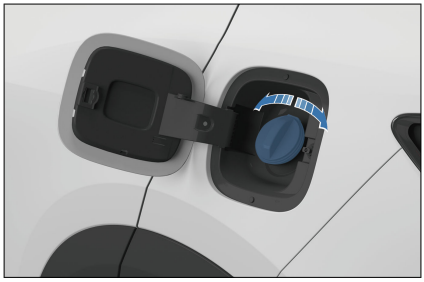
1. Press the refueling button. The instrument cluster prompts " ⚠ Fuel tank pressure is being released. Please wait." When the pressure release is complete, it prompts " ⚠ Fuel tank pressure released. Please refuel."



2. Press the fuel door, and it automatically pops open slightly.



3. Open the fuel door and turn the fuel cap counterclockwise to remove it.



- The fuel cap is attached to the vehicle with a tether to prevent loss. While refueling, place the fuel cap on the holder inside the fuel door.

4. After refueling, tighten the fuel cap clockwise, then close the fuel door.

WARNING

- Fuel is highly flammable. Observe the following precautions during refueling:
  - Refuel outdoors whenever possible.
  - Do not smoke while refueling to prevent fire or explosion.
  - Do not remove the fuel cap immediately after opening the fuel door. In hot weather, if the fuel cap is removed too quickly, pressurized fuel may spray out and cause injury.
  - After refueling, immediately wipe off any spilled fuel.
  - Refueling and charging must not be performed at the same time. Do not refuel while the charging connector is plugged in. Keep a safe distance from flammable materials to avoid equipment damage or injury caused by fuel combustion.

CAUTION

- Stop refueling after the nozzle automatically clicks off. Do not overfill the fuel tank. Leave space for fuel expansion due to temperature changes.
- After refueling, check that the fuel cap and fuel door are properly closed.
- If the fuel cap is not tightened properly, will display on the instrument.
- If refueling is not completed within 15 minutes after opening the fuel door, close it and reopen

CAUTION

before refueling again. Otherwise, fuel may splash back.

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life

- Saving fuel is simple and easy, and it helps prolong the vehicle's service life. Here are some tips for saving fuel and repair costs:
  - Constant speeds save fuel. Sudden acceleration, sharp turns and emergency braking increase consumption.
  - Speeds should be kept constant according to traffic conditions. Each deceleration or acceleration of the vehicle consumes additional fuel.
  - Using the A/C adds extra load to the engine, which increases fuel consumption. Turn off the A/C when it is not needed to help reduce fuel usage. When outside temperatures are moderate, use fresh air mode.
  - Make sure tire pressure is correct. Insufficient tire pressure causes tire wear and fuel waste.
  - Avoid long-term idling of the engine. If you are in a low-traffic area and have to wait for a long time, it is better to turn off the engine and start it later.
  - Do not stop the vehicle to warm up the engine. Instead, drive slowly immediately after starting the vehicle to let the engine reach the working temperature as soon as possible and reduce the emission of harmful substances. In special environments at extremely low temperatures, you can keep a higher idle speed by slightly stepping on the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is in Neutral under "HEV-SPORT" mode, and then start driving slowly after the warm-up.
  - Cold start: When the engine is cold, avoid high engine speeds or hard acceleration immediately after starting. It is recommended to drive gently until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
  - Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Frequent stop and start cause fuel waste.
  - Avoid unnecessary parking or braking. Maintain a steady speed and follow traffic lights to minimize the number of stops. When driving on roads without traffic lights, keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead to avoid sudden braking, which also helps reduce brake wear.
  - Do not drive on roads with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as possible.
  - Avoid resting your foot on the brake pedal when there is no braking demand, as this can cause wear, overheating, and fuel waste.
  - Keep moderate speeds in motorways. Higher vehicle speed consumes more fuel. Maintaining vehicle speed within the economical speed range can save fuel.
  - Keep front wheels properly aligned, avoid driving into curbstones, and drive slowly in rough terrain. An inaccurate front wheel alignment causes excessive tire wear and increases the engine load and fuel consumption.
  - Keep the bottom of the vehicle clean and mud free. This reduces vehicle weight and prevents corrosion.
  - Adjust the vehicle to keep it at its best working status. Such

conditions as dirty air filters, much carbon deposit in spark plugs, dirty, deteriorated or viscous engine oil and lubricating oil, and unadjusted brakes worsen the engine performance and waste fuel. Regular maintenance must be carried out to ensure a long service life of all components and reduce operating costs. If the vehicle is often driven under severe conditions, the maintenance interval shall be shortened.

REMINDER

- Do not coast in Neutral gear.

Carrying Luggage

- This vehicle has multiple storage spaces. Overloading or improper accommodation may affect maneuverability, stability and normal operation of the vehicle, and reduce its safety.
- The glove box, storage boxes on interior trim panels and seatback pockets are designed for small and light objects, while the trunk for large and heavy objects.
- Long items can be loaded by folding the rear seat backrests. Overloading or improper accommodation may affect maneuverability, stability and normal operation of the vehicle, and reduce its safety.
- Make sure the vehicle's total load (vehicle + passengers + luggage) remains within the specified maximum weight.

WARNING

- Overloading and improper accommodation may affect stability and vehicle control, which may lead to accidents.
- Observe the maximum weight limit and other loading guidelines in this manual.
- Do not carry highly magnetic items, as they might interfere in the vehicle's operating functions.

Carrying Items in the Passenger Area

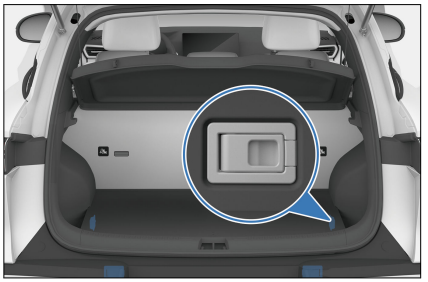
- All items that could be thrown inwards and thus injure occupants in case of a collision must be properly placed and secured.
- Do not place any objects on the inner side of rear windshield. Otherwise, these objects will block the driver's line of sight and will be thrown here and there inside the vehicle in case of collision.
- Ensure that items placed on the floor behind the front seat do not roll under the seat, so as to avoid affecting the driver's ability to control the pedals or normal seat adjustment. Do not stack items to a height taller than the front seats' seatbacks.
- Make sure the glove box is always closed while driving. If the glove box is open, the occupant's knees may be injured in case of a collision or an emergency stop.

REMINDER

- Do not pile up toys in the vehicle, as this may affect driving safety and present a hazard to the children, especially in case of emergency braking or collision.

Loading the Trunk

- Place luggage evenly in the trunk. Put heavier items at the bottom and as far in as possible.
- Secure items with ropes or straps so that they will not move while driving. Do not stack items to a height taller than seatbacks.
- The side panels of the trunk are equipped with luggage anchors.



Roof Rack*

- Storing luggage on the roof rack will increase overall energy consumption and change the way the vehicle drives and handles.
- When installing the roof rack, please read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.
- Try to load the roof beam evenly and keep the center of gravity low. Loads on the roof rack may elevate the overall center of gravity, which might alter your driving experience.
- When driving a heavily loaded vehicle, take extra precautions, drive slowly, and increase your following distance.
- The maximum recommended load evenly distributed over the beam is: 75kg.

CAUTION

- Luggage must not be put on the roof metal sheet directly. The roof metal sheet is not designed for loading.
- Use the roof rack properly and fasten the luggage on the beam.
- Make sure the luggage is securely fastened on the roof rack before driving and during parking.

Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning

- The engine exhaust contains CO gas. If the vehicle is properly maintained, CO may not enter inside during normal driving.
- Check the exhaust system for leakage under the following conditions:
  - The exhaust sound is abnormal.
  - The vehicle has been involved in an accident that may have damaged the underside of the vehicle.

WARNING

- Inhalation of CO, which is toxic, may cause loss of consciousness and can be life-threatening. Avoid any enclosed spaces or activities that may lead to CO poisoning.
- High-concentration carbon monoxide gas will quickly concentrate in closed areas, such as garages. Do not start the engine when the garage door is closed. Even if the garage door is open, the running time of the engine shall be limited to the time when the vehicle can be driven out of the garage.

WARNING

- When the trunk is opened, airflow will bring the exhaust into the vehicle, creating a dangerous environment. If the vehicle must be started with the trunk open, all windows should be lowered and the interior air control system should be adjusted according to the following prompts:
  - Choose "fresh air mode" mode.
  - Select the "face/foot level" mode.
  - Set the fan speed to "High".

Wading into Water

- Before driving into flooded areas, check the water depth and make sure it does not exceed the vehicle's lower edge.
- If crossing a flooded area is necessary, turn off the air conditioner and keep acceleration steady to slowly cross over.



- Never stop, back up, or turn off the vehicle in flooded areas.
- Be careful when driving through deep water, as brakes may get wet.
- After crossing over, press the brake pedal several times to dry out the disks and recover brake performance.
- Do not wade into water unless necessary.

WARNING

- Drive carefully to avoid accidents when there is any water or slurry in the braking system, as this may increase the brake response time, thus extending the braking distance.
- Carefully apply any wet brake, and remove ice or water on it.
- Avoid emergency braking as far as possible after driving through any waterlogged road section.
- If the vehicle drives on the waterlogged road, prevent water from entering the motor, otherwise the motor will be damaged seriously. Such damaged is not covered by the vehicle's warranty
- After the vehicle drives through waterlogged road sections, vehicle components, such as drive system, driving system and automotive electric system may also be damaged seriously. Such damage is not covered by the vehicle's warranty either.
- Be sure to find a sheltered place when charging the vehicle on rainy days. If the vehicle is immersed in water or wades through water over the doorsill, which may cause water ingress in high-voltage components, promptly contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for testing and troubleshooting.
- Do not drive the vehicle on the road where the depth of

WARNING

accumulated water exceeds half of the tires.

Influence of water ingress in high-voltage components:

- Water getting into high-voltage components, which are electronic devices, may not be fully dried out by any means.
- Water ingress seriously compromises insulation of high-voltage components, and conductive substances in water may lead to short circuit of high-voltage components or such risk in the entire high-voltage system. This significantly affects the safety and service performance of the vehicle.
- The reduced ingress protection rating and voltage withstanding performance due to water in high-voltage components pose a high safety risk.

Fire Prevention

To prevent vehicle fires in a timely and effective manner, pay attention to the following during use of the vehicle:

- Do not press the accelerator pedal continuously. Otherwise, the engine will always run at a high speed.
- No flammable or explosive items are allowed in the vehicle.
  - Temperatures may reach 70°C in a vehicle exposed to direct sunlight in summer. Therefore, flammable and explosive items, such as lighters, cleaning agents and perfumes, stored in the vehicle can cause a fire or even explosion easily.
- Make sure cigarettes are thoroughly put out.
  - Smoking is harmful to your health and may cause a fire. Cigarettes that not thoroughly put out may cause a fire.
- It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for regular vehicle checks.
  - Check oil leakage in the engine compartment regularly, and clean up the oil dirt and oil stain on the engine in time.
  - Check vehicle wiring, connections, wiring harnesses, insulation, and fixed position regularly. Deal with identified problems promptly.
- Do not refit vehicle wiring or add any unauthorized electrical appliance.
  - The addition of extra electrical appliances, such as high-power audio systems, and light fixtures, may overload and overheat the wiring harness and increase the risk of fire. Improper refitting of electrical appliances or wiring may cause a fire due to contact resistance and abnormal heating.
  - Other replacement wires or fuses in excess of relevant electrical rating are strictly prohibited.
- Select a proper parking location.
  - When parking the vehicle, try to avoid sun exposure.
  - When the vehicle is parked, especially in summer, do check whether there are any flammables such as dry grasses, dead woods, leaves or wheat straws under the vehicle. If any, a fire may be caused as the temperature of the three-way catalytic converter rises after a long-term drive.

- When the vehicle is running, avoid driving on the road sections piled up with flammables such as dry leaves, wheat straws and grasses, or immediately stop the vehicle to check whether any flammables are carried along after passing such road sections. When parking the vehicle, try to avoid sun exposure.

- Disconnect the negative cable of the low-voltage battery when the vehicle is being serviced or repaired.
- Keep a lightweight fire extinguisher in the vehicle and know how to use it.
  - In order to ensure vehicle safety, a fire extinguisher should be equipped in the vehicle, and be checked and replaced regularly. Also, you should familiarize yourself with use of the fire extinguisher and be prepared for any accidents.
- In the event of a fire in the vehicle, take effective measures in a timely and calm manner to minimize any losses.
  - Fires often show early warning signs, such as abnormal noises or odors from the vehicle. If any abnormalities are detected, stop and turn off the vehicle immediately. Use a fire extinguisher to put out the fire if necessary.
  - Call the fire alarm in time, and also dial the insurance company's reporting number and ask the company to come to the fire site for handling.
- Look for the ignition point. If the front compartment is smoking, do not open the hood immediately. (Doing so will let a large amount of air in and cause fire spreading. There is limited comburent in the front compartment. Keeping the hood closed controls the fire so that the fire can be put out more easily.) Point the on-board fire extinguisher at the ignition point from the hood gap to put the fire out, or seek help from the passing cars. If you can borrow more fire extinguishers, open the hood to put it out when you cannot see any flame from outside
- If the fire brigade is involved, ask for a duty performance certificate and a description of fire cause.
- After occurrence of the accident, contact the insurance company for post-event handling in a timely manner.

REMINDER

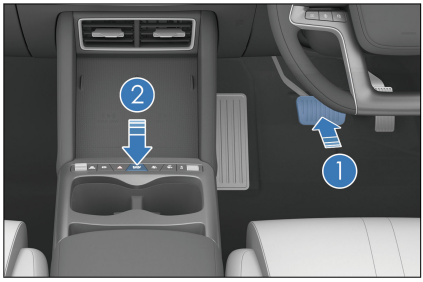
- In order to mitigate losses in the event of an accident, the purchase of fire loss insurance is recommended.

Starting and Driving

Starting the Vehicle

In normal cases, start the vehicle as below:

- Carry a valid smart key with you, depress the brake pedal ① and press the START/STOP button ② at the same time, and then the OK indicator on the instrument cluster illuminates, indicating that the vehicle is ready for driving.
- Shift to "D" or "R" position, and then the electronic parking brake will be released automatically. Do not start driving the vehicle until hearing a motor release sound from the electronic parking brake system.



Situations when the vehicle cannot power on

- The vehicle cannot power on in the following situations:
  - After you press the START/STOP button, the smart key warning light turns on, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected" is displayed on the instrument cluster. This means that the key is not in the vehicle or cannot be detected due to interference.
  - The key is somewhere unsuitable for detection, such as on the floor, in the cup holder, trunk, or storage compartment.
- Pressing the Start/Stop button may not enable the start function due to:
  - If the electronic smart key does not work, the smart key system warning indicator on the instrument cluster flashes, and the message "Low key battery" is displayed, the key battery may have run out. Follow the descriptions in ***P216*** and replace the smart key battery as soon as possible.
  - Except for causes mentioned above, the smart access and start system also fails to work normally under some conditions due to different service environments. See ***P57*** for details.

Starting the vehicle in emergencies:

- Engage the parking brake firmly.
- Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.
- Shift to Park or Neutral.
- Switch the ignition off.
- The electronic smart key is in the vehicle.
- Press and hold the smart key start button for over 15 seconds.

CAUTION

- Do not touch the power button while driving.

Remote Start

Starting the vehicle

1. Press and hold the remote start/stop button on the electronic smart key for two seconds to start the vehicle. After it is started, turn signals will flash three times.
2. If there is no valid operation within 10 minutes after remote start, the vehicle stops and powers off, and turn signals flash twice.



3. Press and hold the remote start/stop button on the electronic smart key for two seconds. The vehicle powers off, and turn signals flash twice.

Auto Power On/Off*

- Enable auto power on/off, disabled by factory default, in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Comfort Driving**.
- When auto power on is enabled, power on the vehicle in the following two methods:
  - Method 1: Unlock with a valid smart key, microswitch, NFC key*, or BYD App*, and then open the driver's door for the first time while carrying a valid key.
  - Method 2: Carry a valid smart key, NFC key*, or use BYD App*, and press the brake pedal. The vehicle is ready to drive.
- When auto power-off is enabled, power off the vehicle in the following two methods:
  - Method 1: Press the START/STOP button.
  - Method 2: Shift to Park, and lock from the outside with a valid smart key, microswitch or NFC key*.

REMINDER

- Auto power-on is operational only when the driver's door is opened for the first time after unlocking.
- If a door other than the driver's door is first opend after unlocking:
  - When the ignition is still off, opening the driver's door the first time switches it on.
  - When the ignition has been switched on and then off, opening the driver's door does not switches it back on.
- When auto power-on is disabled, the brake pedal and the START/ STOP button must be pressed to power on the vehicle.
- Auto power-on is not operational when the bonnet is open.
- To prevent false triggering, BYD App* can only lock but not power off the vehicle.

Driving

Driving Energy Settings

- During driving, energy is recovered through regenerative brakes when the vehicle decelerates. For higher efficiency, do not accelerate or decelerate the vehicle unnecessarily.
- You can set the regenerative braking intensity according to your driving habits on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **Energy** → **Energy Manager** → **Regenerative Braking** so that he vehicle delivers the optimal regenerative braking based on the chosen mode and actual driving conditions.
  - **High**: Provides maximum energy recovery, resulting in a higher vehicle deceleration.
  - **Standard**: Requires longer deceleration time and coast distance than the High mode.
- You can select the regeneration intensity based on your preferred deceleration sense when releasing the accelerator pedal. Different deceleration senses deliver different driving experiences.

WARNING

- Do not adjust the regenerative braking intensity while driving at high speeds, as you may be distracted, resulting in accidents.

CAUTION

- When the battery temperature is too low or too high, or when the battery SOC is high, regenerative braking may be limited.
- Regenerative braking cannot replace conventional braking. In scenarios requiring strong deceleration or when driving downhill, the driver should apply brakes as needed.
- The set regenerative braking intensity is stored and remains effective after the vehicle is powered off and restarted.

- In HEV mode, the engine automatically starts and stops as needed to charge the battery or provide additional power. In some conditions, the engine may start, or stop if it has started.
- Vehicle power is lower at low battery SOC than that at high battery SOC.

Kick-Down function*

- When climbing a slope or requiring rapid acceleration, depress the accelerator pedal close to its end position. As the pedal resistance increases, the Kick-Down function is triggered, raising the engine RPM to provide greater power.
- The higher the battery charge, the more powerful the battery discharge, and the engine will operate normally, providing a better acceleration experience.
- Faults of the battery, generator, or engine affect Kick-Down power output.
- Frequent triggering of the Kick-Down function will cause the battery level of the vehicle to drop rapidly.

Safety Check before Driving

Before driving long distances, carry out a safety check or, alternatively, take the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

Exterior

- Tires: check tire pressure and carefully inspect tires for any cut, damage, foreign material, anomaly, and excessive wear.
- Lug nuts: ensure all nuts are fitted and tightened.
- Leaks: Check for fluid deposits under the vehicle after it has been parked for a while. Inspect for leaks of fuel, engine oil, coolant, or other liquids. However, it is normal for a small pool of water to form due to the air conditioning system.
- Lighting: make sure headlights, position lights, turn signals and all other lights are working normally. Check headlight intensity.

Interior

- Seat belts: Check whether seat belts can be properly fastened. Verify that seat belts are not worn or scratched.
- Instrument cluster: Particularly, verify that maintenance indicator, instrument cluster lighting, and defroster work properly.
- Brake pedal: Verify that there is enough space for the brake pedal to work.
- Low-voltage battery and cables: Check connectors for any corrosion or

looseness and any cracks in the low-voltage battery housing.

In the engine compartment

- Spare fuses: Verify that spare fuses of all rated charges in the fuse box are available.
- Coolant level: Verify that coolant level is correct.
- Fuel pipe: Check the pipe for any fuel leakage and loose connections.

Check after starting

- Exhaust system: Check the exhaust system for leakage. In case any anomaly is found, have it repaired.
- Engine oil level: After the engine is warmed up, stop it for 10 minutes, park the vehicle on the flat ground, and check the oil level, see ***P207***.
- Instrument cluster: Confirm that the maintenance indicator and the speedometer work normally.
- Brakes: In a safe area, verify that the vehicle maintains a straight driving direction.
- Other abnormalities: Check for loose parts, leaks, and unusual noises.

Preparations before Driving

- Check the surroundings before getting into the vehicle.
- Adjust seat position, seatback angle, cushion height, headrest height, and the steering wheel angle and height.
- Adjust the rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- Close all doors.
- Fasten the seat belts.

Fuel-Efficient Driving

Fuel consumption and driving range are influenced by various factors. Taking appropriate measures, such as good driving habits and regular maintenance, can not only improve the driving range and reduce fuel consumption, but also contribute to environmental protection.

- Try to drive in ECO mode.
- Keep the vehicle in good conditions.
  - Maintenance: Regular maintenance of the vehicle can ensure a longer lifespan and optimal economic performance.
  - Regularly check tire pressure: Check the tire pressure at least twice a month and before long trips. Adjust the tire pressure as necessary. Low tire pressure increases rolling resistance, which can increase both power consumption and fuel consumption, and accelerate tire wear.
- Use the economic speed as much as possible:
  - Maintaining an economical driving speed can effectively increase the driving range and reduce fuel consumption. Excessive speed or low speed can be detrimental to fuel efficiency. Try to maintain your vehicle at an optimal speed for fuel efficiency while making sure your safety.
- Predictive driving:
  - On the premise of ensuring driving safety:
  - Avoid unnecessary parking or braking.
  - Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

- When approaching a red light, release the accelerator pedal to allow the vehicle to coast to a stop.
- Try to maintain a constant speed.

- Use the energy recovery system appropriately.
  - Under the premise of ensuring safety, choose an appropriate braking strength based on different road conditions to match the vehicle's driving state. To fully utilize the energy recovery system, try to gently apply the brakes to slow down and avoid sudden deceleration.
- Reduce unnecessary items inside the vehicle.
  - Additional weight will increase energy consumption.
- Use the air conditioning system properly
  - Heating and cooling processes are very energy-intensive and can significantly reduce the driving range and increase fuel consumption. Proper use of the air conditioning system can effectively reduce electricity and fuel consumption.
- Disable functions that are not currently needed.
  - Interior heating consumes a huge amount of electrical energy (e.g. seat heating* etc.) and should be switched off when not required.

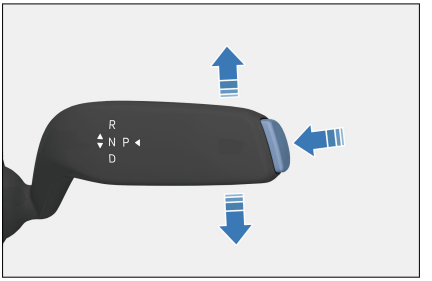
REMINDER

- During the break-in period, do not drive the vehicle under heavy loads or at a speed that exceeds the maximum allowed speed.
- To reduce wear and tear on the vehicle, it is recommended to accelerate gently instead of pressing the accelerator abruptly.

Gear Shift Controls

The gear positions are marked on the gear shift lever.

After starting the vehicle, press the brake pedal and push the gear shift lever up or down to shift between gears.



- Park ("P")
  - Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete stop and press the "P" button to shift into Park.
- Drive ("D")
  - When the vehicle is in Park, press the brake pedal and push the lever down two positions to shift into Drive.
- Reverse ("R")
  - When the vehicle is in Park, press the brake pedal and push the lever up two positions to shift into Reverse.
- Neutral ("N")
  - When the vehicle is in Park, press the brake pedal, move the lever up or down, and hold briefly to shift into Neutral.
  - When the vehicle is in Drive, and the speed is below 10 km/h, move the

lever up one position and hold briefly to shift into Neutral.

- When in Reverse, with the vehicle speed no higher than 10 km/h, move the lever down for one gear and hold briefly to shift into Neutral.

WARNING

- Do not drive the vehicle down a slope in Neutral gear, otherwise the transmission may be damaged and safety may be impaired.
- Do not shift a gear when stepping on the accelerator pedal to prevent accidents. When stepping on the accelerator pedal, Drive and Reverse gears cannot be shifted into.
- In order to prevent accidents, never shift into Reverse or press the "P" button while the vehicle is moving.

CAUTION

- Confirmation of gear on the instrument panel cluster must be done after shifting gears. If the displayed gear is not as desired, shift the gear again.
- Pay attention to the surroundings when reversing to avoid accidents.
- When parking, confirm that the gear is in Park before leaving the vehicle.

REMINDER

- If the shift is successful, the lever returns to its middle position after it is released.

REMINDER

- Pushing or pull the selector while the vehicle speed does not permit or the brake pedal is not being pressed cannot shift the gear. This is informed of on the instrument cluster.
- Drive and Reverse gears can only be shifted into when the vehicle is powered on.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

Be sure to engage the EPB every time before parking and leaving the vehicle.

Engaging EPB Manually

Drop down the shortcut menu to activate EPB. When the vehicle is not in Park and EPB is released, pressing the brake pedal engages EPB to apply an appropriate parking brake force. The indicator on the instrument cluster flashes and then becomes steady on to indicate that EPB is engaged. The "EPB activated" message is also displayed.

CAUTION

- When Ⓟ flashes, EPB is working. If the vehicle is on a slope, do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ is steady on. Otherwise the vehicle may move down.

Engaging EPB Automatically

Engaging EPB automatically is designed to improve vehicle safety. Excessive reliance on or frequent use of the function is not recommended. For safety reasons, make sure that the vehicle is

shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

Switching the ignition off

- When the ignition is switched off, EPB engages automatically and Ⓟ lights up on the instrument cluster.

Shifting into Park

- Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle steadily and shift into Park. EPB is engaged automatically. Do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.
- Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete stop. If the driver's door is opened while the gear is in Drive or Reverse, the vehicle will be automatically shifted to Park and the EPB will be engaged. Do not release the brake pedal until the indicator Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.

WARNING

- Refrain from excessively utilizing the automatic EPB engagement triggered by opening the driver's door, as it may result in the EPB not engaging properly or insufficient clamping force, leading to rollaway risks. For safety, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.
- Do not release the brake pedal early in the process, especially when the vehicle is stopped on a slope; otherwise the vehicle may slip back.

Automatic EPB Release upon Vehicle Start

Releasing by shifting gear

- With the vehicle parked, start the vehicle, press and hold the brake pedal, and shift from "P" or "N" into a driving gear such as "D" or "R". EPB is released automatically, the indicator goes off, and the "EPB released" message is displayed.

CAUTION

- Be sure to always press and hold the brake pedal when shifting gears. Release the pedal only after the intended gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Within several seconds after the vehicle is started, the EPB system performs a power-on self-test (POST). In this process, the EPB system does not respond to any function.

Releasing by pressing the accelerator pedal

- When the vehicle has been started and the gear is in a driving gear such as "D" or "R", engage EPB manually, then simply press the accelerator pedal slowly to a certain degree. EPB is released automatically and Ⓟ turns off with the message "EPB released" displayed.

Emergency Braking When Brake Pedal Fails

- During driving, if the braking fails or is blocked, continue to press the P gear switch for over two seconds for emergency braking.

WARNING

- For safety considerations, refrain from using EPB for braking in normal driving. It is preferred to be used when the brake pedal fails or is blocked.
- As the EPB cannot go beyond the physical limit of road adhesion, activating the emergency brake function may result in vehicle drift, sideslip or deflection when the vehicle passes through bends or dangerous/heavy-traffic road sections, or when the vehicle is driven under severe weather conditions. Be careful to avoid any possible accident.

CAUTION

- For safety considerations, refrain from using the EPB for braking in normal driving. If the brake pedal fails or is blocked, use the emergency braking function while you can always keep the vehicle under control and drive normally.

EPB Trailer Mode

The EPB trailer mode is designed for the situation when EPB is automatically engaged with the ignition off. When the vehicle needs to be powered off for towing, or when it malfunctions, you can switch on the trailer mode to exit parking with EPB.

- Enable or disable this function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Vehicle** → **Driving Control**.
- EPB trailer mode can be activated when all the following conditions are met:
  - The vehicle is in Park.
  - Press the brake pedal.
  - The charging connector is not connected, and the vehicle is not being charged.

CAUTION

- When the activating conditions of EPB trailer mode are not met, a corresponding prompt message displays on the infotainment touchscreen.
- After activating the EPB trailer mode, the corresponding screen always displays on the infotainment touchscreen unless you tap to exit the EPB trailer mode.
- When the vehicle is on a slope and you need to enable the EPB trailer mode, do not release the brake pedal during the process to avoid vehicle slipping.

- EPB trailer mode can exit when any of the following conditions is met:
  - Disable the EPB trailer mode on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - Press the "P" button.
  - Charging starts after the charging connector is connected.

EPB System Indicator

- When the vehicle is powered on, if the EPB is engaged, (P) is solid on on the instrument cluster.
- When the vehicle is powered off, if the EPB is engaged, (P) on the instrument cluster turns on and then turns off in several seconds.
- When the vehicle is powered on, the EPB system starts self-check. The (!) indicator on the instrument cluster

turns on and then turns off in several seconds. If it does not, the EPB or braking system may be faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

EPB Operating Sound

- EPB motor noises can be heard while the EPB is being engaged or released.
- If there is a burning smell or unusual noises after emergency braking is activated, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

WARNING

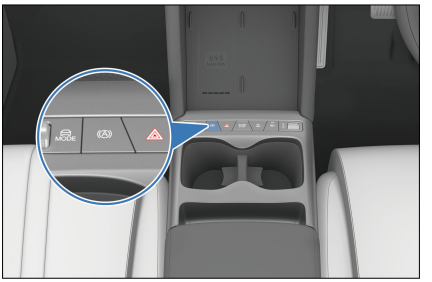
- To prevent the vehicle from moving, the vehicle must be in "P" gear and make sure that EPB is engaged before getting off.
- The EPB switch must not be operated when the vehicle is moving.
- When the EPB switch is pulled or released, the brake pedal must be pressed to prevent the vehicle from moving, and the subsequent locking of the gearshift that occurs because EPB cannot provide a sufficient parking force.

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)

Automatic vehicle hold (AVH): The automatic vehicle hold (AVH) is activated automatically when the moving vehicle needs to be stationary for longer periods of time, such as in traffic jams on a slope or waiting at traffic lights.

AVH standby

- When the ignition is on, press the AVH switch to enable the function. The AVH standby indicator is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Press the AVH switch again to disable AVH.



AVH activated

- When the AVH standby indicator is solid on, press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero) to activate AVH. At this time, the vehicle is in AVH state with displayed on the instrument cluster.

CAUTION

- For AVH to be activated, all of the follow conditions must be met:
  - The driver's seat belt is fastened and the doors are closed.
  - Intelligent power braking system and electronic park brake (EPB) systems are normal.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal, shifting into Park, or engaging the EPB manually can make AVH exit to the standby status.
- The AVH is off by factory default.

AVH running

- The AVH runs normally when it is activated, brake lights and the high-mount brake light are on, and the AVH

indicator (Ⓐ) on the instrument cluster is solid on.

- The AVH function exits to the standby mode after the vehicle stops for 10 minutes, with the AVH standby indicator (Ⓐ) lighting up and gear shifted into Park.
  - Shift into "D", drive the vehicle normally, then press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero) to activate AVH.

AVH exits

- When the AVH function runs normally, the following actions make AVH exit and shift the vehicle from Drive to Park automatically:
  - Open the driver's door.
  - Unlock the driver's seat belt.
  - The gear status is in Drive when the vehicle stops, and EPB is enabled.
  - Press the AVH switch again to disable AVH when releasing the brake pedal.

AVH suppressed

- Shifting into Reverse, AVH goes into slow-moving condition. When the vehicle is reversing (R gear) or traveling (shift into D gear from R gear) at a low speed, AVH cannot be activated and stays in standby status to improve vehicle motion.
- To exit slow-moving mode, press the AVH switch or drive at a speed above 10 km/h. The AVH function is on standby and can be activated normally.

Driving Precautions

- Slow down when driving against strong winds.
- Drive slowly and carefully along gravel roads. To prevent tire damage, do not drive over sharp-edged obstacles. Or it will severely damage the tires.
- Slow down on bumpy or uneven roads. Otherwise, the impact may seriously damage wheels.
- Cleaning the vehicle or driving through deep water may wet brakes. When checking if they are wet, first ensure the surroundings are safe, then gently press the brake pedal. If you do not feel normal braking force, the brakes may be wet and need to be dried. While driving carefully, lightly press the brake pedal with the EPB engaged.
- If the wheels are stuck, it is recommended to switch to the corresponding terrain mode (if equipped) to assist in freeing the vehicle. However, if the vehicle power is low, all four wheels slip, EV function is limited or ESC system fails, the vehicle may not be able to get out of trouble successfully.

WARNING

- The driver shall ensure the riding safety of all passengers in the vehicle, guide them to correctly use vehicle features, and prevent children and other passengers operating control switches such as window switches in a wrong way.
- Make sure no occupant sticks their head or hands outside the window, especially when children are on board.
- Be careful when accelerating or braking on slippery roads. Quick acceleration or sudden braking will cause the vehicle to skid or deviate.

WARNING

- Do not leave the vehicle when the drive motor is running.

CAUTION

- When driving, do not press the Start/Stop button for more than 3 seconds. This operation will cut off the power output and activate the emergency power off function. Therefore, unless it is absolutely necessary (such as when it is impossible to stop normally), do not use this method to stop, so as not to cause vehicle collision or serious personal injury.
  - If the emergency power-off function is activated, the vehicle will be switched from "OK" to "ON", and the vehicle will lose power and cannot run normally. At this time, it is recommended that you turn on the hazard warning lamp.
  - Emergency power off during driving will not cause the steering system and braking system to be out of control, but the steering wheel and brake will lose power assistance. At this time, it is more laborious to turn the steering wheel and step on the brake pedal. Therefore, before emergency power withdrawal, the vehicle should be slowed down as much as possible, or parked on the roadside as far as possible on the premise of safety.
- Before driving, make sure that EPB is fully released and that the EPB indicator light is off.
- Under normal driving conditions, do not press the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time,

CAUTION

otherwise the power output may be limited.

- Avoid resting your foot on the brake pedal when there is no braking demand, as this can cause overheating, wear and power waste.
- Slow down when driving down steep slopes, and avoid braking too frequently to prevent disc overheating, which affects brake performance.
- Avoid driving through flooded areas as much as possible.
- Large amounts of water entering the engine compartment can cause damage to the engine power system or electrical components.

Winter Driving Precautions

- Make sure the coolant is freeze-proof.
  - Use coolant of the same type as the one used originally. Fill up coolant into the cooling system based on ambient temperature.
  - Improper coolant damages the cooling system.
- Check batteries and cables conditions.
  - The low-voltage battery's capacity is lower in cold weather, so they must be fully charged when winter comes.
- Avoid door frost.
  - Spray some deicing agent or glycerin in the lock hole to prevent freezing.
- Use anti-freeze washer fluid.
  - These can be found in the BYD authorized dealer or service provider and the auto parts stores.

- The water and anti-freeze ratio must conform to manufacturer instructions.

CAUTION

- Use special washer fluid to prevent paint damage.

- Prevent ice and snow from going under the fender.
  - Steering is difficult with ice or snow accumulating under the fenders. When driving in cold weather, stop from time to time and check for snow and ice under the fenders.
- It is recommended to carry emergency tools or items for different road conditions.
  - It is advisable to have snow chains, window scraper, bags of sand and salt, flashing signal, a shovel and connecting cables in the vehicle.

Winter Tires

- Winter tires provide better traction on snowy roads. The special rubber mixture and tread pattern makes the tires less affected by low temperatures and delivers excellent braking performance to improve driving safety.

Usage tips

- It is recommended to use winter tires in snow or ice conditions or at temperatures below 7°C. When temperatures rise to above 7°C, install summer or all-season tires instead for driving safety and better performance.
- Winter tires must be the same size, load index, and speed rating as those originally provided by BYD.
- Winter tires must have adequate tread depth. Tires with a tread depth less than 4 mm do not perform well in winter conditions.
- Winter or summer tires are designed for specific acceleration conditions. Use them in the corresponding seasons to avoid poor traction or braking performance.
- Do not exceed the speed rating of winter tires, which is relatively low.
- After installing winter tires, inflate them to the design pressures.

Snow Chain Instructions

- Snow chains are only for emergencies or areas where they are permitted by laws.
- Snow chains should be installed on front wheels. Be careful when driving the vehicle installed with snow chains on snow-covered roads. Some snow chains may damage the tires, wheels, suspension, or vehicle body. It is recommended to use thin snow chains with a thickness or diameter no greater than 10 mm to ensure adequate clearance between the tires and other components inside the wheel well.
- Read the component assembly drawings and other instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer carefully.
- Before purchasing and installing snow chains, consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider where your vehicle was purchased.
- In order to minimize wear of tires and snow chains, do not travel with snow chains on roads without snow.

REMINDER

- Driving speed must not exceed 30 km/h or the speed limit specified by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Drive carefully, paying attention to bumps, potholes, and sharp turns that can cause the vehicle to bounce.
- For vehicles with snow chains, avoid sharp turns or braking with locked wheels, and slow down the vehicle before entering a curve to avoid accidents due to loss of control.
- Install the chains symmetrically and remove them once you are on snowy or muddy roads.
- If abnormal noise is heard from the snow chain, it indicates that the chain may contact vehicle components such as suspension, body or brake lines. In this case, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection.
- When installing the snow chain, park the vehicle on a flat surface away from traffic, turn on the hazard warning lights, and place a warning triangle at the rear of the vehicle.
- Before installing snow chains, engage the parking brake.
- Do not install snow chains with insufficient tire pressure.
- When using snow chains, be careful not to damage the wheel rims.

Driver Assistance

Driver Assistance System

- The functions of the driver assistance system are divided into two categories: driving assist and safety assist.
  - Driving assist: It includes two functions with varying levels of intelligence: adaptive cruise control (ACC) and intelligent cruise control (ICC), designed to assist the driver in driving.
  - Safety assist: provides front*, side*, and rear* safety assistance functions to help the driver maintain safe driving.

WARNING

- Before using the driver assistance system, the driver should carefully read, understand, and comply with the relevant agreements and accompanying documents. The driver should fully understand the system-related information, including but not limited to: the user guide, general system limitations, descriptions of each function, applicable scenarios, operating methods, and precautions. Strict compliance with the operating instructions is required; otherwise, accidents, property damage, or personal injury may occur. Unless otherwise required by applicable laws and regulations, BYD assumes no liability for property damage, personal injury, or other consequences caused by the driver's non-compliance with this manual, relevant agreements, or accompanying documents.

WARNING

- The system is designed to assist the driver, not to replace your judgment and operation. When using the system, the driver must comply with local traffic laws and regulations, always keep their hands on the steering wheel, remain alert, and continuously monitor the surroundings for potential hazards. The driver must intervene or take control of the vehicle whenever necessary to ensure safe driving. Failure to do so may result in accidents, property damage, or personal injury.
- The terms and expressions related to vehicle control in this manual are intended to provide clear and concise instructions during system operation. During system operation, the driver remains the sole operator of the vehicle and must continuously monitor the vehicle status, system operation, surrounding environment, and relevant targets. In the event of system limitations or unexpected scenarios, immediate manual intervention and control are mandatory to ensure driving safety. Otherwise, accidents, property damage, or personal injury may occur.
- The driver shall use the driver assistance system in accordance with local laws and regulations, and shall not add functions, Apps, or tools to the system for any improper or illegal acts, nor shall they illegally collect and use personal information and geographic data through the system. BYD bear no responsibility for any illegal activities resulting from misuse, improper use, or

WARNING

unauthorized modification of the system functions or services. BYD reserves the right to temporarily disable system functions or even terminate services to the user. Additionally, BYD reserves the right to retain data related to the user's illegal activities for submission to authorized agencies in accordance with legal procedures.

CAUTION

- The driver assistance system is only designed to assist the driver in driving, not an automatic or unmanned driving system. The system is designed to assist the driver, not to replace your judgment and operation. Although the system provides a certain level of assistance, it cannot address all scenarios that may arise due to traffic, road conditions, visibility, adverse weather, or other environmental changes during driving. Therefore, the driver remains fully responsible for all driving decisions and must ensure compliance with local traffic laws and regulations at all times.

Sensors of the Driver Assistance System

The vehicle is equipped with sensors such as MmWave radars and cameras.

Sensor cleaning and maintenance

- Ensure that all radars and cameras are clean and the front windshield is clean and free from frost or fog. Dirt, obstructions, or attachments on the radar or camera surface, or dirt, frost,

or fog on the front windshield may affect the system working.

- When a radar or camera is blocked or dirty, the instrument or infotainment touchscreen may display a message prompt. Clean and maintain accordingly. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider when necessary.
- Common radar or camera occlusion or dirty scenes and corresponding treatment suggestions:
  - If the radar or camera lens housing is covered with ice or frost, it is recommended to melt it using warm water or a antifreeze-containing cleaning solution. After melting, wipe the surface dry with a clean optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.
  - If the radar or camera lens housing surface is adhered with dust, mud spots (including muddy water stains), bird droppings, or other contaminants, it is recommended to rinse with running water or windshield-specific cleaning solution until the dirt and adhered contaminants soften or detach. Afterward, wipe the surface clean with a dry optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.
  - If the radar or camera lens housing surface has moisture or condensation, it is recommended to wipe it clean with a dry optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible water stains remain.
  - When driving in environments with poor lighting or obstructions, such as single-sided overpasses, tunnels, deserts, grasslands, or snowy areas, it is recommended to drive the vehicle away from the current environment so as to resolve the sensoring faults due to obstructions, with no further actions required.
- Cleaning and maintenance tips:
  - When the windshield fogs up or there is a risk of fogging, it is recommended to turn on the windshield defrosting function to prevent fogging or frosting on the windshield.
  - Using a neutral cleaning agent (such as soap water) to clean stains on the radar surface is recommended. After cleaning, rinse the radar housing surface with clean water first, and then wipe it dry with a clean lint-free cloth.
  - Do not apply films, wax, non-OEM paint, vehicle wraps, or coatings to the radar housing area, as these actions may impair radar sensing performance.
  - Do not use a cleaning brush to clean the radar or camera, as sand or debris mixed into the brush may cause scratches on the lens housing and casing.
  - Do not use hot water to remove ice or snow from the lens housing, as it may cause the lens housing to crack.
  - Do not wipe the radar cover forcefully to avoid damaging the optical coating of the lens housing.
  - Do not use metal or other hard objects to scrape the contaminants or ice and snow on the surface of the lens housing and casing to avoid damage.
  - Avoid spraying directly on the radars and cameras when washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water.
  - The mmWave radars are installed in the front and rear bumpers. To avoid affecting radar performance, keep

the bumpers clean. Do not paint, add body kits, or install metal or alloy (including electroplated) decorative parts on the bumpers, as this may impair radar functionality.

Sensor limitations

- Limitations of radar and camera include but are not limited to:
  - Radars and cameras may have detection blind spots when perceiving the surrounding environment.
  - Radars and cameras may detect falsely such as incorrectly identifying the distance or speed of objects, or detecting objects when none are present.
  - Radar and camera sensors may miss a target, such as partially identifying or failing to detect vehicles, pedestrians, animals, or other obstacles. M
- Many factors can affect sensor performance, leading to false detection or missed detection. Carefully read the limitations of the driver assistance system.

WARNING

- It is strictly prohibited to use strong alkali, strong acid, ammonia-containing cleaning solvent, bleaching agent, cement cleaner, asphalt cleaning agent, glue remover, polishing agent or paint remover to clean radar and camera lens housings and casings.
- Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider if a radar or camera needs to be replaced. Do not install or use parts not approved by BYD or make modifications not approved by BYD.

WARNING

- If the front windshield, fender, side mirror, bumper or trunk lid need to be replaced, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to ensure proper disposal of radars and cameras.
- If the area where a sensor (radar or camera) is installed is damaged or collided with, causing the sensors to become misaligned or damaged, the system may fail to work. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to check.
- After a radar or camera is replaced, calibrate in time according to this manual. An unsuccessful calibration may affect the proper operation of the system.
- Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

General Limitations of the Driver Assistance System

Driver assistance features employee multi-sensor fusion algorithm. Various factors can impair their performance. These include but are not limited to device issues (including improper operations), environment of use (such as weather and road conditions), and influence of vehicles around and other road users.

Device issues (including user-related reasons)

- The mmWave radars or cameras are not calibrated, are damaged, or covered by objects such as ice, water, frost, mud, or dust.

- There are strongly reflective objects around, such as highway traffic signs, metal railings, and water reflection on the road.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration and checkup of the system in any of the following situations:
  - The front camera or front windshield has been removed.
  - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
  - Scrapes, collisions, or other impacts have led to sensor or vehicle structural error, especially sensor displacement due to deformation or damage of the bumper, front windshield, side mirrors, body panels (for example, fenders and tailgate), frame, or other components.
- Trailer hitches or loaded objects protrude from the vehicle.
- Interference or obstruction is caused by bike rack or other non-standard accessories installed at the rear of the vehicle.
- Obstructions is caused by excessive paint (paint thickness changes) applied or adhesive products (such as tape, stickers, or car covers) attached.
- Do not use steering wheel cover on vehicles equipped with capacitive sensors. They could give rise to malfunctions.
- Cases where system performance may be reduced include but are not limited to:
  - The brake pads are excessively worn or the braking system malfunctions.
  - Tires are improperly inflated or worn out.
  - Unqualified tires are installed.
  - Snow chains are installed.
  - A small spare tire or tire repair kit is used.
  - The vehicle is heavily loaded.

Environment of use

- Radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.
- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection, causing the vehicle to brake late or fail to decelerate as expected.
- On sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of sensor detection for seconds, causing the system to accelerate the vehicle unexpectedly.
- The system may not be able to correctly identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, bicycles, motorcycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires constant attention on the surroundings.
- The system cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as snow mode.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.

- The vehicle is operating in extreme weather, such as heavy rain, snow, fog, or smog, or on icy and slippery curves.
- Visibility is poor due to heavy smoke, splashing water, dust, or exhaust emissions from nearby vehicles.
- Lane lines are excessively worn, blocked, or covered, have disappeared, are overlapping old ones, have been adjusted in road constructions or change rapidly.
- The vehicle is in intense light (for example, oncoming headlights or direct sunlight) or low-light conditions (for example, dawn, dusk, or nighttime).
- The vehicle experiences extreme lighting contrast, for example, at the tunnel entrance or exit.
- The environment is extremely hot or cold.
- Weight or width limit signs not in standard size as per national regulations may be mistaken for speed limit signs.
- If a speed limit sign is unclear or distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked or covered, the camera may be unable to recognize the sign completely or clearly.
- The vehicle is in complex road conditions, such as steep slopes, sharp curves, continuous curves, narrow winding roads, narrow lanes, off-road roads, rough roads, roads with grooves or potholes (for example manholes), roads with a drop-off or cliff on one side, raised road shoulders, excessively wide lanes, construction zones (for example areas with traffic cones), or areas involving on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll gates.
- The vehicle is in poor road conditions, such as slippery or soft surfaces (such as water accumulation, ice, snow accumulation, muddy roads, gravel roads, or sandy roads), blurred lane markings, or damaged road signs.

Vehicles around and other road users

- Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
- Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
- There are close-proximity non-motorized vehicles (including but not limited to two-wheelers, three-wheelers, bicycles, motorcycles, trolleys, strollers, and shopping carts), animals, or pedestrians (especially children).
- There are stationary vehicles, upturned vehicles, or irregularly shaped vehicles, such as engineering vehicles, flatbed trucks, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo.
- Irregularly shaped obstacles nearby, such as transparent stools, chairs, tables, traffic barriers, and traffic cones, and other obstacles are difficult for the system to identify.
- Vehicles have large areas of monotonous background colors.
- The traffic is complex where vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists, animals, or other obstacles appearing suddenly and approaching rapidly, or there are on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll stations

WARNING

- If the sensors are displaced or damaged after scrapes or collisions (including minor impacts), do not use driver assistance features. Instead, contact a BYD authorized dealer

WARNING

or service provider for inspection and servicing.

- For safety, do not use driver assistance features in bad weather or in poor lighting conditions.
- For safety, do not deliberately test driver assistance features, for example, waiting for system reaction to emergencies without manual intervention.
- Read carefully all instructions to avoid feature deactivation or danger incurred by incorrect operations. For example, the acceleration request overrides emergency braking if the accelerator paddle is depressed with AEB on.
- Due to system limitations, the driver assistance system may give improper warnings or interventions while monitoring the surroundings. It may also raise false alarms as a result of operation misinterpretation. Stay alert.
- Due to system limitations, the driver assistance system may not be able to accurately detect or respond to sudden situations in the surroundings. The driver must stay alert at all times and be ready to intervene or take control of the vehicle (for example, by decelerating, braking, or steering) when necessary. Failure to observe precautions above could result in an accident or personal injuries.

Driving Assist

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

- Adaptive cruise control (ACC), an extension of traditional cruise control, uses sensors on a front mmWave radar or front camera to detect the relative distance and speed of the vehicle ahead, so as to maintain the set cruise speed or time-base following distance. When there are no vehicles ahead, the vehicle maintains the set target cruise speed. and adjusts speed according to the set time-based following distance once a front vehicle is detected.

CAUTION

- ACC is enabled by default and cannot be manually disabled. The driver can activate ACC using the buttons on the steering wheel. See "ACC Activation Methods" for details.
- ACC only serves to assist in cruise control, and your active steering wheel manipulation remains necessary for ensuring the correct traveling direction of the vehicle.

Function Status

- ACC on: If the conditions for ACC activation are met, the driver can activate ACC using the steering wheel button. If the conditions are not met and the driver attempts to activate ACC, the instrument cluster will display a "Function Unavailable" message.
- ACC activated: The system can maintain the set cruise speed or automatically adjust the distance to the vehicle ahead. Pressing the accelerator pedal temporarily overrides ACC control, which will resume once the pedal is released.

- ACC failure: ACC is not available. If the driver attempts activation, the instrument cluster will display a "Function Unavailable" message.

Function Status	Indicator	Display Status	Meaning
ACC on		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on but not activated yet in the current ignition cycle.
ACC on		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on, can be activated, and had already been activated in the current power cycle. The last set cruise speed is displayed in the indicator icon.
Active		Indicator on	ACC is active. The cruise speed set is displayed in the indicator icon.
Unable to be activated/faulty		Indicator on	ACC is not available because it cannot be activated or is faulty.

Activation conditions

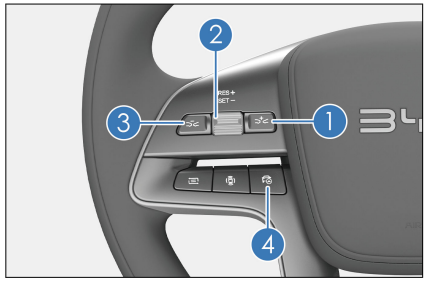
- EPB is not engaged.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle does not slide backwards.
- The trunk, hood, and all doors are closed.
- The driver seat belt is fastened.
- The electronic stability control (ESC) system is on.
- The vehicle speed is not greater than 150 km/h.
- If the vehicle is stationary (zero speed) and the brake pedal is pressed or EPB is engaged, ACC can be activated.
- If the vehicle is moving (speed greater than 0) and the brake pedal is not pressed, ACC can be activated.
- The AEB function is not activated.

CAUTION

- The ACC is suitable for highways and roads in good conditions, rather than complex urban or meandering roads.

Activation methods

- During the current power cycle, the first activation of ACC can only be done using button ④. If ACC has been activated in a current power cycle, pushing rocker switch ② up can also activate ACC.



- When activating the function via button ④, the system sets the current

speed as the target cruise speed (if the current speed is below 30 km/h, it will be set to 30 km/h). When activating via rocker switch ②, the target cruise speed is set to the last value before exiting the function.

WARNING

- The system cannot automatically adjust speed to road and driving conditions. You are supposed to set target speed as per local traffic laws and regulations and respond to changes in a timely manner to ensure driving safety.

Setting the target cruise speed

Configuration 1

- When ACC is activated, you can set the target cruise speed between 30–150 km/h by moving rocker switch ② up or down. Briefly pushing rocker switch ② up/down increases/decreases the target cruise speed by 5 km/h each time, whereas holding it up/down increases/decreases the speed by 1 km/h successively.

Configuration 2

- When ACC is activated, you can set the target cruise speed between 30–150 km/h by moving rocker switch ② up or down. You can customize the speed adjustment setting on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Speed Adjustment Mode**, and select between "Short press ±5 / Long press ±1" or "Short press ±1 / Long press ±5".
  - When the speed adjustment setting is "Short press ±5 / Long press ±1", briefly pushing rocker switch ② up/down increases/decreases the target cruise speed by 5 km/h each time, whereas holding it up/down increases/decreases the speed by 1 km/h successively.
  - When the speed adjustment setting is "Short press ±1 / Long press ±5", briefly pushing rocker switch ② up/down increases/decreases the target cruise speed by 1 km/h each time, whereas holding it up/down increases/decreases the speed by 5 km/h successively.

WARNING

- ACC cannot immediately slow down the vehicle to the desired speed. Never be over-reliant on the system.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Setting following distance

- Buttons ① and ③ increases and decreases the time-based following distance. At each setting level, the faster the speed, the longer the distance to the vehicle ahead.
- ACC increases or decreases the time-based following distance from level 1 to 4 in sequence, and the default setting is level 3.

Cruise control

- When no front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain the set speed.

Following

- When a front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain a safe distance to follow and lets the vehicle speed up, slow down, brake, and start accordingly.
- On the instrument cluster, the followed vehicle in front is highlighted with blue color. The following distance is fixed but varies with vehicle speed and the chosen following distance level. See "Setting following distance".
- When active, ACC helps adjust the following speed and target when the target cuts out or another vehicle cuts in and switches to cruise control (without distance control) if no new following target appears.

Follow-to-stop/start

- Under normal driving conditions, ACC enables your vehicle to follow the vehicle ahead to start or stop:
  - ACC automatically accelerates your vehicle away from a standstill if the vehicle ahead pulls away within a short period of time.
  - If the vehicle ahead stops for a long time, depress the accelerator pedal or move rocker switch ② upward to start the vehicle.
  - ACC will be canceled and EPB engaged after the ACC system holds your vehicle at a standstill for too long. In that case, you will have to disengage EPB and press the brake pedal in order to reactivate ACC.

ACC Accelerates the Vehicle

- The acceleration rate of the ACC is linked to the selected driving mode.
  - In Sport Mode, the vehicle provides faster acceleration.
  - In Normal Mode, the vehicle provides moderate acceleration.
  - In Economic Mode, the vehicle provides smooth acceleration.

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and following distance according to local road regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ACC is unable to deal with oncoming traffic.
- ACC may not correctly recognize the target if the front vehicle or pedestrian is too close.
- On curves, the vehicle may follow a wrong target, leading to unintended traveling speed or direction. You must stay focus and take control of the vehicle in a timely and correct manner whenever noticing such situations.
- To prevent collisions, never be over-reliant on ACC adjustment of speed and following distance to keep a correct and safe distance from the front vehicle. You are responsible for determining and keeping the safe following distance.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Adjusting speed with ACC active

- Enable or disable this function in the infotainment touchscreen→ ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Adjust Cruise Speed by Accelerator** and the function is off by default.
- When ACC is activated, you can accelerate manually by pressing the accelerator pedal; the driver assistance system does not brake during this process.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal to increase current speed rapidly, and releasing the pedal to raise the target cruise speed.
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed until the real-time vehicle speed exceeds the target cruise speed, the target cruise speed will be reset to the real-time speed when the pedal is released.
  - If the target cruise speed is greater than 80 km/h, the cruise speed setting is not updated when the accelerator pedal is released after acceleration.
  - If the target cruise speed is below 80 km/h and the real-time speed is over 80 km/h after acceleration, the cruise speed is set to 80 km/h when the accelerator pedal is released.
  - If the target cruising speed is less than 80 km/h and the real-time speed after acceleration is less than 80 km/h, set the cruising speed to the current real-time speed when the accelerator pedal is released.
- If rocker switch ② is pulled down while accelerating, the current speed will be reset as the target cruise speed.

Exiting ACC

- When ICC is disabled on the infotainment touchscreen, ACC can be deactivated by pressing button ④ or the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving. When the vehicle is stationary, ACC can only be deactivated by pressing button ④.
- When ICC is enabled on the infotainment touchscreen, ACC can be deactivated by pressing the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving.

Speed Adjustment on Curve* (also applicable to ICC)

- This feature works only with ACC active.
- Enable or disable this function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Curve speed reduction** and the function is off by default.
- With this feature switched on and ACC active, the vehicle decelerates as appropriate for the curvature before entering a curve for driving safety and comfort.

System limitations

- Exterior ACC sensors
  - The mmWave radars and cameras are installed in the front of the vehicle. Blockage of its detection area can compromise the intended function. In particular, if the sensor is covered completely, ACC exits and informs the driver on the instrument cluster. System functionality will recover after blockage is removed and the vehicle is restarted or runs on normal roads for a while.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.

- The front mmWave radar may have a transient failure from detection limitations if the vehicle runs in circular ramps or tunnels or under other special conditions for an extended period. The function will be recovered after the vehicle is away from such conditions.
- The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- Metal objects, such as rail or metal plates used in road construction, may interfere with front mmWave radars, making it malfunction.
- Detection may be affected or delayed by noises or electromagnetic waves.
- Performance of front mmWave radar sensors and cameras may be affected by vibration or collision. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection, causing the ACC vehicle to brake late or fail to decelerate as expected.
- On roads with sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of ACC sensor detection for seconds, so ACC may accelerate.

WARNING

- ACC cannot deal with sharp, consecutive, and other complex curves, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.

- Traffic flow and surroundings must be heeded for setting and adjusting the following distance. Even when ACC is properly set, the driver must be able to stop the vehicle at any time.
- The ACC system may not be able to identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, motorcycles, bicycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires the driver to beware of the surroundings.
- The ACC system is capable of limited braking instead of emergency braking.

WARNING

- ACC is not a collision warning or avoidance system and therefore cannot replace collision prevention warning, collision prevention brake, or other active safety assist features, which we strongly advise you to keep switched on (see "Safety Assist" for details).
- ACC cannot react to poles, bollards, and other obstacles, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- Never be over-reliant on ACC for full deceleration and collision prevention. You need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- The vehicle may not be able to detour around front targets that risk colliding with it, especially when the target is stationary or when the vehicle is excessive.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair

WARNING

driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

- ACC cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as snow mode.
- ACC and its related features may operate improperly or deactivate in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Vehicle issues (including but not limited to improper operations):
    - Vehicle speed is greater than 155 km/h.
    - Any door, the hood, or the trunk lid is open or faulty.
    - Tire pressure is abnormal.
    - Airbags are abnormal.
    - The vehicle is in any of the following states: not in Drive, in the process of braking, hill descent system/hill hold system/ traction control system activated, colliding with or being collided by another vehicle, ignition off.
    - The vehicle's chassis, braking system, traction control system, or electronic stability system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.
    - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
    - The driver assistance system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.
  - Environment factors (including but not limited to weather, visibility, road conditions):
    - Low visibility settings such as nighttime, rainy, snowy, or foggy days, dusty environments, lack of lighting, low-light conditions, backlighting, and glare
    - Road openings, intersections, narrow roads, and steep slopes
    - Mountain roads and rural roads
    - Waterlogged, icy, and snow-covered sections.
    - Sharp curves, serpentine curves, switchback roads, and other high-curvature turns
    - Unpaved roads such as muddy roads, gravel roads, and off-road trails
    - Presence of curbs and other low-profile, static, or nearby obstacles
  - Vehicles around and other road users (including but not limited to):
    - Congested intersections
    - Pedestrians and vehicles weaving through the intersection
    - Sudden appearance of pedestrians, cyclists, and animals previously in the blind spot
    - Sudden braking of the vehicle ahead
    - Adjacent large vehicle merging into the vehicle's lane
    - Pedestrians or other vehicles cutting in line, jaywalking or road-hogging, merging in from a sharp angle, or traveling in the wrong way
    - Stationary vehicles, upturned vehicles, and vehicles with irregular shapes, such as flatbed trucks, engineering vehicles, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo

- Front vehicle or adjacent front vehicle with any door open or things falling off

- Other issues
  - Include but are not limited to other situations listed under general system limitations.

WARNING

- ACC is only a driver assistance feature, and cautions here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. You are fully responsible for your driving safety and must always be aware of surroundings.
- Use ACC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- ACC cannot be activated with ESC off.
- The ACC is suitable for highways and roads in good conditions, rather than complex urban or meandering roads.
- It is the driver's responsibility to keep distance from the vehicle ahead. Set a time-based following distance compliant with the minimum requirement for the local driving environment.
- Pressing the accelerator or brake pedal while ACC is active allows you to take over the vehicle. Therefore, take caution to keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
- ACC may have no or slow responses to a vehicle ahead that

CAUTION

stops suddenly, resulting in a risk of late braking.

- In some cases, such as when the preceding vehicle is moving too slowly, when your vehicle changes lanes too quickly, or when the distance from the preceding vehicle is too short, the system may not have sufficient time to reduce the speed or issue timely warnings. In such cases, the driver must respond appropriately and promptly.
- If ACC is activated with the vehicle stationary, the system identifies any stationary obstacle ahead and keeps the vehicle still to ensure a safe startup and prevent collision. However, this function cannot identify all the obstacles, so the driver must be alert to the front obstacles or other traffic participants.
- If a vehicle in an adjacent lane is too close to your lane, the ACC system, when activated, may respond and apply the brakes.
- Vehicles coming into your ACC vehicle's route and within its camera detection range will be identified and reacted to as targets, which may lead to hard or late braking.
- Keep control of the vehicle if ACC cannot target the vehicle ahead (no highlighted target on the instrument cluster).
- When the vehicle stops as it follows a vehicle ahead, in rare cases, the system does not recognize the end of the vehicle ahead (for example, the rear axle of a truck with a high chassis

CAUTION

or a rear bumper). This means a suitable following distance cannot be kept and you must stay alert and ready to brake at any time.

- Modifying the vehicle structure, such as lowering the chassis, may affect the ACC system.
- Do not use ACC when visibility is poor, or when driving on slopes, winding roads, or wet roads (covered in ice/snow or flooded).
- Because speed limit recognition could be misled by road conditions, always monitor the speed limit of the current road to ensure compliance with traffic laws.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration and checkup of the front camera in any of the following situations:
  - The front camera or front windshield has been removed.
  - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or the instrument cluster has prompted an system error.

Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)*

- Intelligent cruise control (ICC) assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the current lane at speeds between 0 and 130 km/h. It is primarily intended for use on roads with clear lane markings and in good driving conditions. When using ICC, the driver must control the driving route. The driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel while the function is active and be ready to take manual control whenever necessary.
- ICC uses sensors such as radars and cameras to monitor the road ahead. Based on the detected environment, it assists the driver in controlling the steering and speed, building upon ACC functionality to keep the vehicle in its current lane.
- ICC only assists in keeping the vehicle within the current lane; it does not provide route guidance. When using ICC, the driver must always keep both hands on the steering wheel, take control when route adjustments are required, and pay attention to instrument cluster and audio alerts. The driver must be prepared to take immediate corrective action to ensure safe driving. If the driver's hands are removed from the steering wheel for a certain time, a driver disengagement alert will be triggered.

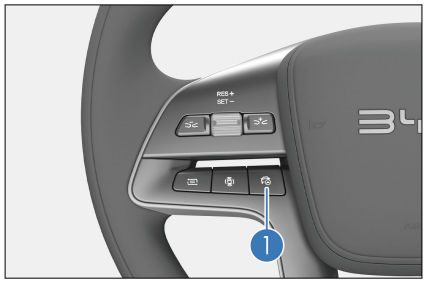
ICC indicators

Indicator	Display Status	Meaning
	Indicator on	ICC available but not activated
	Indicator on	ICC activated and operating

Indicator	Display Status	Meaning
	Indicator on	ICC fault, unavailable

Activating ICC

- ICC is available for activation when  displays on the instrument.
  - Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist**. When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- Pressing button ① to activate ICC. If the activation conditions are not met (for example, no lane lines), ACC will be activated first. Once the activation conditions are met, ICC will be automatically activated.



-  displays on the instrument cluster when ICC is successfully activated. Target speed will be shown in the indicator .

Cruise control

- ICC assists the driver in keeping the vehicle centered in the lane, while supporting all ACC functions such as constant-speed cruising and following-distance control and all ACC operations such as adjusting target speed and following distance.

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and following distance according to local road regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ICC cannot detect all potential hazards so the driver must stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary. Always keep both hands on the steering wheel and remain aware of the surroundings, ready to take prompt control of the vehicle and take corrective measures.
- Do not over-rely on ICC to keep the vehicle in the lane. In certain situations, such as curves, the vehicle may drift towards or across lane markings. The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct lane position.
- The driver is supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and take control of the vehicle whenever necessary to ensure safe driving.

Exiting ICC

- Press the button ① or brake pedal to exit if the vehicle is not stationary.
- Press the button ① to exit if the vehicle is stationary.

WARNING

- The vehicle may not stabilize immediately upon ICC activation. The driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel, stay aware of driving conditions, and be ready to take control at any time.
- Ensure surrounding conditions are safe before activating ICC. Avoid over-reliance on the system.
- ICC can be affected by weather conditions, lighting, and lane marking visibility. Performance degrades significantly in situations such as backlight, front light, glare, bright light, snow covered roads, and roads with heavily worn lane markings.
- Do not use the ICC on winding roads, icy or slippery curves, or under poor weather conditions such as dense fog, heavy rain, or snow, which may obstruct the forward camera's view.
- Speed limit recognition could be misled by map updates, vehicle connectivity, and road conditions. The driver must always observe current road speed limits to ensure complies with traffic regulations.

CAUTION

- Activate ICC only after the vehicle is stable (steering wheel centered, vehicle aligned in lane, no sharp turns).
- ICC activation may fail when driving through intersections. Try activating the system after passing the intersection and entering a stable lane.

Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)*

Function overview

- When the traffic sign recognition (TSR) system detects that the speed limit is different from the ACC target cruise speed set by the driver, the system will prompt whether to adjust the target cruise speed according to the speed limit. When the driver presses the SET− or RES+ button, the target cruise speed will be adjusted to the speed limit.
- The system's operating speed range is 30–150 km/h.

Function settings

- ISLC setting: infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
  - This function is disabled by factory default.
  - When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
  - When TSR is disabled, ISLC also ceases to function.
  - With TSR on, ISLC can be enabled or disabled depending on your needs.

CAUTION

- ISLC integrates ACC and TSR. Therefore, the precautions of ACC and TSR must be followed when using ISLC.

Forward Safety Assist

Front Collision Warning (FCW)*

- Forward collision warning (FCW) uses the front mmWave radar or cameras to detect vehicles, pedestrians, and cyclists in front. When detecting a risk of collision, the system alerts audibly

and visually to reduce or avoid the risk of collision.

Function overview

- Safe distance warning:
  - When the vehicle runs at about 65–150 km/h, the system monitors the road ahead in real time. If it detects the vehicle is following another vehicle at a short distance for a long time, it issues a safe distance warning.
  - The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, and a message is displayed to alert the driver.
- Pre-warning:
  - When the vehicle runs at about 15–150 km/h, if the system determines a collision risk with a target ahead, it issues a pre-warning. The driver needs to promptly take appropriate actions to ensure safe following distance.
  - The system issues a visual and audible pre-warning. The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, a message is displayed, and the buzzer sounds.
- Emergency warning:
  - If the vehicle runs at about 15–150 km/h, if the driver does not respond appropriately after the pre-warning and the collision risk increases, the system issues an emergency warning. The driver needs to promptly take appropriate actions to ensure safe following distance.
  - The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, the buzzer alarms, a textual prompt is displayed, and there is a short braking warning.

WARNING

- FCW is a driver assistance feature. Its operation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, target type, distance to the target, and system response delay, which may result in delayed warnings, missed alerts, or false warnings. FCW can not replace the driver's judgment and operation.

Function settings

- You can set the FCW function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The settings are defined as follows:
  - OFF: FCW is disabled.
  - Late: FCW is enabled and issues a late warning.
  - Moderate: FCW is enabled and issues a moderate warning.
  - Early: FCW is enabled and issues a early warning.

REMINDER

- The factory default setting is moderate.

System limitations

- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that approach from the front.
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the vehicle's path.
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes.
  - Animals.

- Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles.

- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - Poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
  - Dirty, hazy, damaged or blocked sensor.
  - The front hood or trunk is not properly closed or is opened while driving.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened or it is unfastened when the vehicle is moving.
  - The driver presses the brake pedal.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
  - The ESC function is disabled or ESC fault indicator is on.
  - Modifications to the vehicle, such as excessive paint thickness from repainting, application of films, adhesive tape, or decorative elements, may interfere with the performance of cameras or mmWave radars.
  - The system is starting up, for example when the vehicle has just been powered on or is restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In complex traffic situations, FCW may not be able to respond correctly to the following situations, including but not limited to:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, motorcycle, or an unusually shaped vehicle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
  - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed by noises or electromagnetic waves.
- Forward collision warning may trigger unnecessary warning for water stains on the ground, road shadows, manhole covers, iron plates or road signs.
- The front mmWave radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or

tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.

WARNING

- Make sure to drive safely and observe surrounding traffic conditions. FCW is not a substitute for the driver's normal judgment and operation.
- If FCW gives an alarm, the driver must brake based on traffic conditions to decrease vehicle speed or steer away from obstacles.
- If the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead for too long, a safety distance warning will be given. If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, collision may be unavoidable.
- As the pedestrian protection function cannot overcome the restrictions of some physical conditions, it may not fully work within the speed range specified by the system. Therefore, the responsibility to use brakes timely and effectively always lies in the driver. Whether a warning is issued in pedestrian protection scenarios depends on the actual situation.
- In pedestrian protection scenarios, the system cannot guarantee the complete prevention of accidents and severe injuries.
- The pedestrian protection function may trigger unwanted alarms in some complex situations, for example, on curved main roads.
- There may also be unnecessary alarm intervention in case

WARNING

of malfunctions in the pedestrian protection system, such as angular misalignment of the radar/multi-function video controller.

- Do not try to test FCW with carton, iron plate, dummy and other objects. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the mmWave radars* in case of any of the following situations:
  - The mmWave radar or front camera is removed.
  - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
  - The vehicle experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
- Use FCW based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- FCW cannot guarantee a warning in all cases. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
- When the radar or front camera is covered with dirt or foreign objects, a corresponding message will appear on the instrument cluster. In this case, remove the obstructions as instructed as

REMINDER

contamination or obstruction may cause sensor blindness. When the sensor is dirty or covered by foreign matter, the forward collision warning is disabled. After clearing, the forward collision warning is normal.

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)*

- AEB uses the front mmWave radar or the camera to detect vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists ahead. When detecting a risk of serious collision, the system automatically applies braking pressure to assist in collision avoidance or impact reduction.
- When the vehicle runs at 4 km/h-150 km/h, AEB continuously monitors the forward driving environment in real-time. When detecting a risk of collision with vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists ahead, the system automatically applies braking pressure to decelerate the vehicle.
- During emergency braking, the instrument cluster displays a braking indicator and a prompt message "Emergency braking", and an audible alarm is triggered simultaneously.

WARNING

- AEB is a driver assistance feature not designed to prevent collisions but rather to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking efficiency, and tire status. Braking may occur incorrectly if

WARNING

the system misidentifies objects. AEB can not replace the driver's judgment and operation.

Function settings

- Enable or disable AEB on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

WARNING

- It is strongly recommended that not to disable the AEB function. If it is disabled, the vehicle will be unable to assist the driver in reducing vehicle speed or avoiding/mitigating collisions.

REMINDER

- This function is enabled as delivered from the factory.

System limitations

- AEB is only activated when the vehicle speed exceeds 4 km/h. This feature is designed to reduce the risk of collision but does not guarantee collision avoidance at all speeds. Please note that the system does not guarantee that it can be triggered accurately under every working condition. Please drive carefully.
- Targets that may not be responded include, but are not limited to:
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that approach from the front.
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the vehicle's path.
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes.
  - Animals.

- Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles.

- AEB may be affected or inoperative under the following conditions, including but not limited to:
  - Poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
  - Poor road conditions such as pits, bumps, slippery surfaces, or steep slopes.
  - Dirty, hazy, damaged or blocked sensor.
  - The front hood or trunk is not properly closed or is opened while driving.
  - The driver is not wearing a seat belt or has unbuckled it.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
  - The ESC function is disabled or ESC fault indicator is on.
  - Modifications to the vehicle, such as excessive paint thickness from repainting, application of films, adhesive tape, or decorative elements, may interfere with the performance of cameras or mmWave radars.
  - The system is starting up, for example when the vehicle has just been powered on or is restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.

- In complex traffic situations, AEB may not be able to respond correctly to the following situations, including but not limited to:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, motorcycle, or an unusually shaped vehicle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
  - The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed by noises or electromagnetic waves.

- System performance may be reduced in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - Strong front bumper impact from accidents or other causes.
  - Excessive wear of the brake pads or braking system malfunction.
  - Improperly inflated or worn out tires.
  - Unqualified tires installed.
  - Snow chains installed.

- Use of a small spare tire or tire repair kit.
- Heavy loads.
- The vehicle is in break-in period.

- AEB may trigger unnecessary braking for water stains on the ground, human silhouettes, road shadows, manhole covers, iron plates or road signs.
- The front mmWave radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.
- AEB cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as towing and snow mode.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, AEB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- Be sure to drive safely and keep eyes on the surrounding traffic conditions. Under no circumstances shall AEB be used as a substitute for the driver's judgement and operation.
- As the pedestrian protection function cannot overcome the restrictions of some physical conditions, it may not fully work within the speed range specified by the system. Therefore, the responsibility to use brakes timely and effectively always lies in the driver. Whether a braking is issued in pedestrian protection scenarios depends on the actual situation.

WARNING

- In pedestrian protection scenarios, the system cannot guarantee the complete prevention of accidents and severe injuries.
- The pedestrian protection function may trigger unwanted braking in some complex situations, for example, on curved main roads.
- There may also be unnecessary braking intervention in case of malfunctions in the pedestrian protection system, such as angular misalignment of the radar/multi-function video controller.
- Do not attempt to test the PEB system on your own using objects such as carton, iron plate, dummy, etc. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the mmWave radars in any of the following situations:
  - The mmWave radar or front camera is removed.
  - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
  - The vehicle experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
- Use AEB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- During an emergency warning, the system will not activate AEB if the driver has already taken evasive action, such as steering, accelerating, or braking firmly.
- AEB cannot guarantee a braking in all cases. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
- When the radar or front camera is covered with dirt or foreign objects, a corresponding message will appear on the instrument cluster. In this case, remove the obstructions as instructed as contamination or obstruction may cause sensor blindness. IF AEB is off because that sensor is dirty or covered with foreign objects, clear the sensor to make it function normally.

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)*

- The traffic sign recognition (TSR) system detects speed limit signs using cameras and illuminates the speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster to maintain an appropriate speed.

Function overview

- TSR contains: speed limit information function (SLIF) and intelligent speed assistance (ISA).
  - Speed limit information function (SLIF): detects speed limit information by using cameras or map data and lights up the speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster.
  - Intelligent speed assistance (ISA): alerts against speeding with a speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster or a audible alarm, when the vehicle speed exceeds the detected limit.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- When TSR is off, TSR and all subfunctions are disabled.
- When TSR is on, SLIF and ISA can be switched on or off according to needs.
- Audible alert for speed limit change: enables/disables audible alerts when the speed limit changes are detected.
- Intelligent speed assistance (ISA): enables/disables visual and/or audible alerts when the vehicle speed exceeds the detected speed limit.
- Speed limit warning (SLW): The audible alert when the vehicle exceeds the speed limit can be quickly enabled or disabled from the status bar at the top of the infotainment touchscreen.

REMINDER

- The traffic sign recognition system does not control the vehicle speed. The control over the vehicle always vests in the driver. Always drive properly.
- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If it does not, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- If TSR malfunctions and becomes unavailable, have the system repaired immediately.

System limitations

- As a driver assistance system, TSR may not respond to all traffic, weather, visibility, road conditions.
- Speed limit sign detection is sensitive to the environment. Situations that may lead to TSR failure or performance degradation include but are not limited to:
  - The front windshield is dirty or fogged, or the front cameras are blocked.
  - The light changes suddenly, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
  - The speed limit signs are unclear, distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked, or covered.
  - Visibility is poor due to snow, rain, or fog.
  - Weight or width limit signs are not in standard size as per national regulations.
- The system operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the field of view of the front camera, dyed or incorrectly coated windshield, reflective objects placed on the dashboard, or any other interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- TSR cannot assist in speed control. Do not be over-reliant on it.
- TSR is only an assistance feature, and cautions here include only common situations affecting the TSR function. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

CAUTION

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Speed limit signs are unclear.
  - Speed limit signs are incomplete.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the front cameras or late function activation include but are not limited to:
  - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle is operating in extreme weather conditions, such as rain, snow, or smog.
- TSR may not work, work improperly, or deactivate itself when:
  - The driver assistance system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Side Safety Assist*

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)*

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from its current lane, LDA alerts the driver or assists in steering the vehicle back into the lane.
- Lane departure assist (LDA) includes two sub-functions: lane departure warning (LDW) and lane departure

prevention (LDP). The system's operating speed range is 65–150 km/h.

- Lane departure warning (LDW): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in red), steering wheel vibration, or an audible alert to help reduce lane departure risks.
- Lane departure prevention (LDP): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel rotation or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in blue) and applies steering assistance to guide the vehicle back into the lane, helping reduce lane departure risks.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The LDA alert mode is set to steering wheel vibration by factory default and can be changed to Sound, Vibration, or Sound + Vibration.
- LDA default sensitivity level is set as "Moderate". In case of fatigue driving, the system automatically switches to "High". Restarting the vehicle restores sensitivity to "Moderate".
- OFF: no LDA functions active.
- Warning: only LDW enabled, no steering intervention.
- Correction: only LDP enabled, steering intervention applied.
- All activated: Activating both the lane departure warning (LDW) and lane departure prevention (LDP) at the same time.
- The system restores the default settings when the vehicle is started.

REMINDER

- LDA is suppressed if a turn signal is used and the vehicle changes lane as indicated by the turn signal.
- If the driver continuously drives over lane markings, LDA will be suppressed.
- LDP will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- LDA is suppressed if any door, the hood, or the trunk is open or faulty.
- The function will temporarily suspend operation if any object blocks the camera or if it is exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If not, have the system repaired in a timely manner.
- While LDP is activated, the driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel, otherwise the system will audibly prompt the driver to take over the steering wheel.
- When LDA fails, is displayed on the instrument cluster with an audible alert and a prompt message. Contact a BYD

REMINDER

authorized dealer or service provider.

System limitations

- LDA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The detection of land markings is easily interfered by the environment. Situations that may lead to failure or performance degradation of the system include but are not limited to:
  - Dirty or fogged front windshield, or blocked front camera.
  - Glaring from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
  - Lane markings obscured by direct sunlight or tree shadows.
  - Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days.
  - Confusing or unclear lane markings, for example when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction.
  - Rapid changes in lane markings, such as lane splits, crossings, or merges.
  - Lane markings are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred or covered by dirt or snow.
  - Lanes are too narrow, the number of lanes increases or decreases, lane markings change suddenly (for example, on a ramp or exit), or in situations of complex line arrangements.
  - The vehicle is driving on steep slopes or sharp curves, following too closely behind another vehicle, or when the vehicle ahead blocks the lane markings.
- The system may be unable to correct in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
  - Poor road conditions, for example after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.
  - Excessive or insufficient lateral deviation speed of the vehicle.
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle's steering performance happen.
- The system operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the field of view of the front camera, dyed or incorrectly coated windshield, reflective objects placed on the dashboard, or any other interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- For your safety, do not test LDA functions intentionally.
- Do not be over-reliant on LDA functions. LDW only serves to alert for lane departure and cannot assist in steering control.
- LDA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. The driver must stay aware of the surroundings and take necessary control measures promptly if the function is suppressed or deactivated. The

WARNING

driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

- Use LDA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- Disabling LDA is recommended under any of the following circumstances:
  - Driving in a sporty style
  - Severe weather conditions
  - On uneven roads
- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Unclear lane lines
  - Incomplete lane lines
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the camera or late activation of the function include but are not limited to:
  - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked;
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - Partially or completely blocked camera lens.
  - LDW and LDP cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as towing and snow mode.
- LDA may not work, may work improperly, or may deactivate itself when:
  - The driver assistance system is starting up, for example

CAUTION

when the vehicle has just been powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.

- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)*

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from the current roadway or lane and there is a collision risk with a vehicle approaching from the rear* in an adjacent lane or with oncoming traffic in the opposite lane, emergency lane keeping assist (ELKA) assists in steering correction to help avoid or mitigate a potential collision.
- ELKA detects lane markings and road edges ahead with sensors such as cameras and detect vehicles in adjacent lanes with mmWave radars. If the vehicle is detected to unintentionally drift out of its lane, or be at risk of doing so, and is likely to collide with a detected target, corrective steering input of ELKA keeps the vehicle in its lane. This helps prevent unintentional lane departures and reduces the risk of collision with oncoming traffics or overtaking vehicles* in adjacent lanes.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
  - The function is disabled by factory default.
  - OFF: ELKA will not operate.
  - On: ELKA is active.

REMINDER

- ELKA will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- If the turn signal is activated and the driver steers in the indicated direction, ELKA will be suppressed when the vehicle is departing toward the road edge or toward the opposite lane with oncoming traffic present (subject to the actual vehicle configuration).
- If the driver continuously drives over lane markings or the road edge, ELKA will be suppressed.
- If there is a risk of deviation* from the road or side collision but corrective steering could result in a collision with an obstacle along the new path, ELKA will not intervene.
- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If it does not, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for processing.

System limitations

- ELKA's detection of lane markings, road edges, and obstacles is sensitive to the environment. Situations that may lead to no intervention, inappropriate intervention, or reduced performance of the system include but are not limited to:
  - The front windshield is dirty or fogged, or the front cameras are blocked.
  - There is glare from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles.
  - The light changes suddenly, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
  - Lane markings are obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight.
  - Road boundaries are unidentifiable due to grass, soil, curbs and so on.
  - Visibility is poor due to snow, rain, or fog.
  - Lane markings are confusing or unclear (for example, when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction).
  - Lane markings change rapidly, for example when lanes split, cross, or merge.
  - Lane lines that are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred, or covered by dirt or snow
  - Lanes may be narrow, change in number, have sudden changes in lane markings (such as on ramps or exits), or feature complex lane arrangements.
  - The vehicle is operating on slopes or winding roads where it travels too close to the vehicle ahead or when the vehicle ahead obscures the lane markings.
- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as obstructions, obstacle type, position, or appearance timing, which may result in a delayed action. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - Large vehicles ahead block the radar or camera detection area.
  - Obstacles move quickly or enter the area in front of or beside the vehicle at close range.
  - Fences, traffic barriers, traffic cones, or other obstacles are present in the

front-side or rear-side of the vehicle that the system may fail to detect.

- Obstacles block the radar or camera's detection area, such as vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in the front-side or rear-side areas.
- Obstacles in the front-side or rear-side areas have low contrast against the surrounding environment.
- Targets in the front-side or rear-side areas can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
- Targets in the front-side or rear-side areas are located on a curve.
- Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.

- The system may be unable to correct steering in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
  - Road conditions are poor such as after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.
  - The lateral deviation speed is excessive or insufficient.
  - Driving on sharp curves.
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle's steering performance happen.
  - The system operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the field of view of the front camera, dyed or incorrectly coated windshield, reflective objects placed on the dashboard, or any other interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- For your safety, do not test the ELKA function intentionally.

WARNING

- The ELKA function only assists in correcting the vehicle back to its original lane when there is a risk of collision due to vehicle departure from the road* or lane departure, instead of keeping it centered. Do not rely on ELKA to avoid side collisions.
- ELKA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Use ELKA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late warnings include, but are not limited to:
  - Cameras are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle is operating in extreme weather conditions, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - Camera lens are partially or completely blocked.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late alarms include, but are not limited to:
  - MmWave radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.

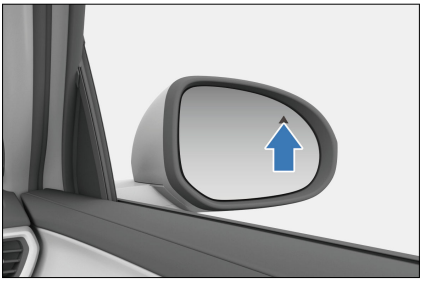
CAUTION

- The vehicle is operating in extreme weather conditions, such as rain, snow, or smog.
- The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- ELKA cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as snow mode.

- ELKA may not work, may work improperly, or may deactivate itself when:
  - The vehicle is at an intersection.
  - The driver assistance system is starting up, for example when the vehicle has just been powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Blind Spot Detection (BSD)*

- When a target in the driver's blind spot is detected, the system gives a warning to remind the driver of safe driving. The function is enabled by default.
- The blind spot detection (BSD) system uses sensors such as radars to detect targets such as vehicles or cyclists in the driver's blind spot. When the vehicle is traveling at about 15–150 km/h, the side mirror indicator flashes if BSD detects a target in the blind area. If the driver toggles the turn signal lever at this time, the side mirror indicator on the target side, the instrument indicator, and the light-colored radar wave on the same side of the instrument will flash, with an audible alarm given (optional) to warn the driver of a possible collision.



REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects to the side mirror lens, as it may interfere with the normal operation of BSD.
- The driver should ensure the normal operation of the BSD system, keeping the BSD radar sensors in good condition. For example, if they are covered in dirt, snow or other obstructions, they need to be cleared right away.
- In towing mode*, BSD does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the side BSD radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- This function is enabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System limitations

- BSD is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- BSD and its related features may operate improperly or deactivate in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, etc.
  - Driving on sharp curves.
  - The vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h.
  - The vehicle is overtaking the preceding vehicle or encountering an oncoming vehicle.
- The system is starting up, for example when the vehicle has just been powered on or is restarting.
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- Poor lighting conditions, such as glare or reflections, may cause the system to incorrectly detect obstacles. For example, railroad tracks, gantries, height restriction bars, traffic signs, or reflective road studs may be misidentified as obstacles, triggering an unintended warning.
- BSD cannot be activated if special driving modes* such as snow mode is enabled.

WARNING

- When the BSD system gives a warning, the driver should avoid lane changes toward the warning-indicated side. The driver should ensure that lane changes are made in a safe manner at all times.
- BSD can not replace interior rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Door open warning (DOW)*

- When detecting a risk of collision when opening the door, the system gives a warning to alert the driver, reducing the possibility of collision and improving safety. The function is enabled by default.
- The door open warning (DOW) system detects targets on both sides of the vehicle such as vehicles and cyclists using sensors such as radars. When the vehicle is stationary with power-on or drives slowly at a speed below 2 km/h, the alarm indicator on the side mirror lights up when DOW detects that there is a risk of collision when opening the door. The indicator remains on until DOW is deactivated, alerting the driver to the risk. If the driver opens the door at this time, the indicator on the corresponding side flashes, accompanied by a audio prompt, reminding the driver to pay attention to the collision risk.

REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects to the side mirror lens, as it may interfere with the normal operation of DOW.
- The driver should ensure the proper functioning of DOW and maintain the condition of the radar installation areas in good condition. Any obstructions such as mud, snow, or other coverings should be promptly removed.
- In towing mode, DOW does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of the DOW's side assist radars, which will degrade the system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The function is enabled by default.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System limitations

- DOW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- DOW and its related features may operate improperly or deactivate in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, etc.
  - The vehicle stops at a turning point or near a wall.
  - There is a large vehicle behind the vehicle, which blocks the radar detection area of the vehicle.
  - There are small targets or slow moving targets.
  - The target speed is too high or there is turning behavior, such as the target vehicle changing lanes to the rear of the vehicle, or other vehicles suddenly changing lanes and entering the detection area behind the vehicle.
- The system is starting up, for example when the vehicle has just been powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- Poor lighting conditions, such as glare or reflections, may cause the system to incorrectly detect obstacles. For example, railroad tracks, gantries, height restriction bars, traffic signs, or reflective road studs may be misidentified as obstacles, triggering an unintended warning.

WARNING

- DOW cannot detect objects behind other vehicles or obstacles.
- DOW cannot replace the use of interior and exterior rearview mirrors or manual visual inspections by drivers and passengers. Active observation of the door opening environment before getting off is the most effective measure and responsibility for drivers and passengers to ensure personal safety.

WARNING

- DOW may give a warning when there is no risk of collision. Stay alert and monitor traffic to decide if action is needed.
- DOW can only prompt the collision risk through warning, but cannot avoid the collision accident.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Rear Safety Assist*

Rear Collision Warning (RCW)*

- The system issues a warning to the driver when a collision from behind is detected while moving forward.
- When the vehicle is traveling below 150 km/h, the rear collision warning (RCW) system monitors the rear driving environment in real time using sensors such as radars and cameras. The system issues a warning when a rear-end collision risk is detected.
- During warning, the interior ambient lights and the front left/right ambient lights on the corresponding side are steady on, and the red area at the rear of the vehicle image on the instrument cluster is highlighted. In addition to issuing a warning to the driver on the instrument cluster, the vehicle simultaneously activates the hazard warning lights to alert following drivers of a potential collision risk.
- When reversing, the RCW system does not work.

WARNING

- RCW is a driver assistance feature. Its operation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, target type, distance to the target, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in delayed warnings, missed alerts, or false warnings. RCW cannot replace the driver's driving and judgment.
- The driver must ensure the normal operation of RCW, keeping its radars in good condition. For example, dirt, snow, or other obstructions need to be cleared right away.
- In towing mode*, RCW does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of the RCW's rear assist radars, which will degrade the system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- This function is disabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System limitations

- RCW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic,

weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.

- The RCW system only takes effect when the vehicle is stationary or moving forward. When reversing, the RCW system does not work.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, etc.
  - Any door, the hood, or the trunk lid is open or faulty.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel, or the vehicle has a risk of lateral instability (such as excessive steering wheel angle or high steering rate).
  - The driver brakes hard.
  - The system is starting up, for example when the vehicle has just been powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations (including but not limited to), the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or experience delayed detection of obstacles due to factors such as rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, or timing, which may result in no warning or a delayed warning.
  - Poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - There is a large vehicle behind the vehicle, which blocks the detection area of the radars or cameras of the vehicle.
  - There are situations where the vehicle's rear is obstructed, or the obstacle has low contrast with the forward visibility environment, leading to unclear, inaccurate, or incomplete detection of the obstacle.
  - The vehicle or the rear target is in a curve.
  - The vehicle's rear has a target that can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
  - High-speed objects, such as fast-moving vehicles or sudden rear-approaching vehicles.
  - The vehicle is reversing.
  - Other conditions outside the detection capability or range of the radar or camera.
- Poor lighting conditions, such as glare or reflections, may cause the system to incorrectly detect obstacles. For example, railroad tracks, gantries, height restriction bars, traffic signs, or reflective road studs may be misidentified as obstacles, triggering an unintended warning.
- RCW cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as snow mode.

WARNING

- RCW is a driver assistance feature. Its operation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, target type, distance to the target, driving environment, and system response delay. RCW only provides reminder assistance and cannot replace the driver's driving and judgment. Do not rely heavily on the warning issued by the RCW system. RCW cannot replace the driver's driving and judgment.
- RCW can only remind the collision risk through the reminder, and can not avoid the collision

WARNING

accident or reduce the collision injury. When the vehicle issues a warning, the driver should take immediate safety measures to prevent the vehicle from further danger.

- RCW may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)*

- When the vehicle is reversing, the RCTA system detects the vehicles traveling in the blind spot at the back. The system gives a warning when it is detected that there is a risk of collision between the vehicle and the rear lateral crossing vehicle, pedestrians or riders. The RCTA operating speed range is 0–15 km/h.
- When the system gives a warning, the instrument cluster displays light gray radar waves on the corresponding side of the vehicle, textual prompts, audible alarm and voice broadcast, and triggers target object rendering to alert the driver of potential risks.

WARNING

- RCTA is a driver assistance feature. Its operation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, target type, distance to the target, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in delayed warnings, missed alerts, or false warnings. The driver must stay aware of the surroundings and take necessary measures promptly when encountering potential hazards.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

System limitations

- RCTA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow, heavy fog, etc.
  - The function is disabled.
  - The vehicle is not in Reverse gear.
  - System initialization has not been complete yet.
  - The system is starting up, for example when the vehicle has just been powered on or is restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.

- In the following situations, the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or delay detecting obstacles due to rear occlusion, target type, position, timing, or other factors, leading to no warning or delayed warning. This includes but is not limited to:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
  - The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
  - The vehicle drives at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - The target is obscured.
  - The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow. Radar are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked; The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, motorcycle, or an unusually shaped vehicle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
  - The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- In towing mode*, RCTA does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of mmWave radars, resulting in degraded system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary warning may be issued in too bright or reflective conditions due to puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- RCTA cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as snow mode.

WARNING

- RCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. The driver must stay aware of the surroundings and take necessary measures promptly when encountering potential hazards. The driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTA to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use RCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTA may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB)*

- RCTB is used if the vehicle meets another vehicle crossing the road when leaving a vertical/slanted parking space. It gives a warning and helps the driver brake to prevent collision, especially when the visual field of the driver is blocked by the vehicle parking beside. The RCTB operating speed range is 0–10 km/h.
- When braking, the instrument cluster displays light gray radar waves on the corresponding side of the vehicle and a message to alert the driver of potential risks.

WARNING

- RCTB serves as a driver assistance function only, which helps the driver avoid or reduce the impact of collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking system efficiency, and tire status. Braking may occur incorrectly if the system misidentifies objects. The driver must stay aware of the surroundings and take necessary measures promptly when encountering potential hazards.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

System limitations

- RCTB is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to brake in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow or heavy fog.
  - The function is set to "OFF" or "Warning only".
  - The vehicle is not in Reverse gear.
  - The accelerator pedal is deeply pressed.
  - System initialization has not been complete yet.
  - The system is starting up, for example when the vehicle has just been powered on or is restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations, the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or delay detecting obstacles due to rear occlusion, target type, position, timing, or other factors, leading to no braking or delayed braking. This includes but is not limited to:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
  - The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
  - The vehicle drives at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - The target is obscured.
  - The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow. Radar are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked; The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
  - The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- In towing mode*, RCTB does not work.

- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of mmWave radars, resulting in degraded system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary braking may occur in bright or reflective conditions due to puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, RCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.
- RCTB cannot be activated if special driving modes* such as snow mode is enabled.

WARNING

- RCTB is only used as a driving assistance function, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. The driver must stay aware of the surroundings and take necessary measures promptly when encountering potential hazards. The driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTB to fail or lead to late braking.
- Use RCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTB may be delayed, missed, or triggered unnecessarily due to system limitations.

Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System

- The direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) is an auxiliary system that monitors tire pressure in real time to improve vehicle safety and comfort and reduce tire wear and energy consumption due to insufficient tire pressure.
- You can navigate to the driving information bar by pressing the button on the steering wheel and to the tire pressure display screen by pressing the button again.

Tire pressure system alarm

- When the pressure of any tire is lower than 80% of the standard tire pressure and the system is running, the tire pressure fault warning light lights up and the tire pressure value turns yellow. In that case, it is recommended to check for slow air leakage and inflate the tire to the correct pressure value.
- When the temperature of any tire is above 85°C for three consecutive minutes, the tire pressure system gives a high temperature alarm, and the temperature value of the corresponding tire turns yellow. It is recommended to stop the vehicle and wait for the tire temperature to decrease before further driving.
- When the system is running, if a fault occurs, the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on after flashing, and the message "No Signal" or "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster. In that case, check the tire pressure monitoring module, and check for any surrounding electromagnetic source nearby. If the alarm persists for a long time, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The system does not stop vehicle traveling in the event of abnormal tire pressure. Therefore, each time before driving, check whether the tire pressure meets the requirements specified by the manufacturer. If not, do not drive, otherwise vehicle damage or personal injury can occur.
- If pressure is found to be abnormal while driving, check the tire pressure immediately. If the low pressure warning light comes on, avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, and reduce vehicle speed, pull it over to the curb and stop as soon as possible. Driving with low tire pressure can cause permanent damage to tires and increase the likelihood of tire scrapping. Serious tire damage can lead to traffic accidents, resulting in serious injuries or deaths.

CAUTION

- The running time of the tire pressure monitoring module is related to the daily travel distance and other factors.
- The monitoring module regularly transmits tire pressure and other information to the display. Therefore, if the tire pressure drops suddenly or there is a flat tire, the monitoring module will not transmit data to the display until the next monitoring. In this case, the vehicle may be out of control. If there is a flat tire and monitoring fails to inform, or if you feel that there are some tire problems, stop driving immediately instead of waiting for the display to signal an alarm.

CAUTION

- Incorrectly installed monitoring module affects the air tightness of the tire. It is recommended that the installation and replacement of the pressure monitoring module be carried out by professional technicians of a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in accordance with the requirements of the installation manual.
- Since tire pressure varies with regional temperatures, inflate or deflate the tires according to the values displayed on the instrument cluster and the standard tire pressure values.
- The tire pressure monitoring system may be disturbed by non-BYD approved electrical accessories on the vehicle. This is not a tire pressure system failure.
- The tire pressure system needs to be matched again after replacement of wheel rims or spare tires* or tire rotations. Go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to re-match the tire pressure.

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)

System Function

The acoustic vehicle alerting system (AVAS) refers to the broadcast to pedestrians near the vehicle when it is traveling at low speed.

- When driving forward:
  - The alert volume increases with vehicle speed in the range of 0 km/h to 20 km/h.

- The alert volume decreases with vehicle speed in the range of 20 km/h to 30 km/h.
- At speeds above 30 km/h, the broadcast sound stops automatically.

- The vehicle makes a continuous and balanced prompt sound when moving in reverse.

WARNING

- If the AVAS prompt sound cannot be heard when driving at a low speed, stop the vehicle in a relatively safe and quiet place, open a window, then drive at a constant speed of 20 km/h in Drive and check whether an audio prompt can be heard from the front of the vehicle. If it is confirmed that there is no sound, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to deal with it.

Around View Monitor (AVM)*

- AVM activation method:
  - To access the around view monitor screen, press the button on the steering wheel.
  - Alternatively, tap the Vehicle Image App on the infotainment touchscreen to enter the AVM screen.
  - Shift into Reverse and the AVM screen is automatically displayed.



- On the bottom of the infotainment touchscreen, tap the icon for the front, rear, right, or left view. View of the selected area is displayed in the image section.
  - In the single front and rear views, double-tap the image section to switch to a 180° perspective displayed in full screen.
  - Tap the radar icon on the AVM screen to enable the radar display, and tap again to disable it. When the radar display is enabled, a warning is displayed as the vehicle is approaching an obstacle.
- Transparent around view: Tap the transparent around view button to switch between transparent and solid vehicle views.
  - When the vehicle is just started, the image before last power-off is displayed for the transparent around view. Foreign bodies shown may be inconsistent with the actual ones in the underbody and surrounding blind areas. The underbody image update will begin only after the vehicle has started to move and will be complete when the vehicle has been driven beyond its length.

WARNING

- The AVM system provides transparent AVM view to show

WARNING

the image below the vehicle. This function is only for assisting in observation of area below the vehicle during parking/driving. Investigation of foreign objects below the vehicle and dangerous situations should be carried out in any other manner to ensure the safety of personnel and the vehicle.

- This system uses wide-angle fisheye cameras, so the object on the display screen may appear somewhat deformed in comparison with the actual object.
- The system is only to be used for parking/driving assistance. It is not safe to rely solely on this system to park or drive the vehicle, because there are some blind spots in front of and behind the vehicle. The surroundings of the vehicle should be observed in other ways during the parking/driving process, so as to avoid accidents.
- When the side mirrors are not extended in place, do not use the AVM system. When using the AVM system for parking/driving, ensure that all doors are closed.
- The distance to an object displayed on the AVM screen may be different from the distance perceived subjectively, especially when the object is closer to the vehicle. Assess the distance in various ways.
- Cameras are installed above the front bumper, the lower parts of the side mirrors, and the rear license plate. Make sure the cameras are unobstructed.

WARNING

- To prevent impairing camera performance, avoid spraying directly on the cameras with high-pressure water. Wipe any water or dust off the camera in time.
- Protect the cameras from any impact to prevent damage or malfunction.
- After the vehicle is powered on, if you press the AVM start button or shift into Reverse while the infotainment system is not fully activated, the output on the AVM screen will be delayed or the screen will flash. This is a normal part of the camera power-on process.
- When the vehicle runs at a low speed, the transparent AVM view function is affected by speed fluctuation or multiple stops, so there will be misalignment between the images below the vehicle and that outside the vehicle.

Reversing View*

Reversing View System*

The reversing view system, a reversing assist system, provides real-time images of objects behind the vehicle to assist the driver in reversing.

- When the vehicle is switched on, shift into Reverse to activate the reversing view.
- The area shown varies with the vehicle's direction and road conditions.

REMINDER

- The system is only for parking assistance. Do not over rely on it. Before reversing, confirm that there is enough space.
- As the camera has a limited field of view, it cannot detect obstacles with unclear features or in the blind spot.

CAUTION

- In the following cases, it may be difficult to see the image on the screen, even if the system is functioning properly.
  - In the dark (such as at night).
  - The temperature near the lens is extremely high or low.
  - There are drops of water on the lens or the humidity is high.
  - A foreign object, such as snow or dirt, sticks to the lens.
  - The lens is scratched or dirty.
  - There is a strong light shining directly on the lens.
- If the camera captures a intense point light source, a light spot will be displayed on the screen, which will interfere with the surrounding scene, resulting in unclear scenery.

REMINDER

- The system can be used in conjunction with the parking assist system and the internal rearview mirrors and side mirrors, but do not rely too much on it. When the surrounding space is very narrow, if necessary, please park with manual command.
- Do not park by looking at the infotainment touchscreen only. There is an error between the perceived distance between the object and the vehicle on the screen and the actual distance. Parking by looking at the screen only may hit other vehicles, pedestrians or obstacles. Be sure to observe the surrounding objects actually before parking with the parking view system.
- Do not use this system when the trunk is not fully closed.
- If you are rear-ended or hit an obstacle, the position and installation angle of the camera will change. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to check the position and installation angle of the camera.
- Do not remove, disassemble or modify the camera as it is equipped with dustproof and waterproof structure. Otherwise, it may not function properly.
- If the temperature changes quickly, the system may not work properly.
- If water, snow, or dirt sticks to the camera, wash it with water and dry it with a soft cloth. For foreign matters that are not easy to wipe off, such as oil stains, rubber, etc., please wash them with mild detergent and water, and then dry them with a soft cloth.
- Do not stick organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner, or glass film

REMINDER

to the camera. If it sticks, remove it immediately.

- Please confirm the objects around the vehicle, because the image displayed on the screen may be blurred or dark. When the temperature outside the vehicle is low, the moving image will be distorted or not clearly visible. When reversing, always look around the vehicle by sight and with the rearview mirrors.
- Do not use the reversing view system when turning on the turn signals or hazard warning light. If there are flashing lights around, turn off the parking view system. Flashing lights can cause a flickering picture on the screen, which may affect your observation of the environment, or even your parking, leading to an accident.

Parking Assist

- During vehicle parking, the parking assist system detects obstacles by sensors, and prompts the driver with the proximity of obstacles by an image on the infotainment touchscreen and a speaker alarm.
- The parking assist system helps with reversing. Pay attention to the environment behind and around the vehicle during reversing.
- When you reverse the vehicle, a reversing image will be displayed on the infotainment touchscreen automatically.
- For your driving safety, when the reversing image is displayed, all buttons will be disabled except some volume and calls-related buttons.
- After reversing ends, the interface will be restored.

WARNING

- When the vehicle speed is over 10 km/h, the parking assist system will cease to operate.
- Do not place any articles within the sensors' working range.
- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not wash the sensor area with water or steam.
- When no camera is available, a "No video signal detected" message is displayed.

Parking Sensor Switch

- To turn the parking sensors on or off, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Parking Assist**.
- When the ignition is switched on, the parking assist system is enabled automatically.
- When the parking assist system is enabled, the vehicle is not in Park, and the EPB and AVH are released, the obstacle detection mode of the parking assist system is enabled. When enabled, the system raises an alarm if obstacles are found surrounding the vehicle; when disabled, it does not.

Sensor Type

- When the sensor detects an obstacle, an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen according to the location of the obstacle and its distance from the vehicle.

- When the driver conducts parallel parking or reverse parking, the sensor measures the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle and communicates this information through the infotainment touchscreen and the speaker. Be aware of the surroundings when using this system.

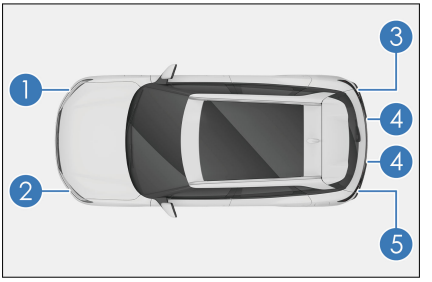
① Front right sensor*

② Front left corner sensor*

③ Rear right corner sensor

④ Rear center sensors

⑤ Rear left corner sensor



Distance Display and Speaker

When the sensor detects an obstacle, the location of the obstacle and its approximate distance from the vehicle are displayed on the infotainment touchscreen, and the speaker beeps.

Working example of center sensors

Approximate Distance (mm)	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm
About 700 to 1,200		Slow
About 400 to 700		Fast
About 200 to 400		Continuous

Working example of corner sensors

Approximate Distance (mm)	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm
About 400 to 600		Fast

Approximate Distance (mm)	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm
About 200 to 400		Continuous

CAUTION

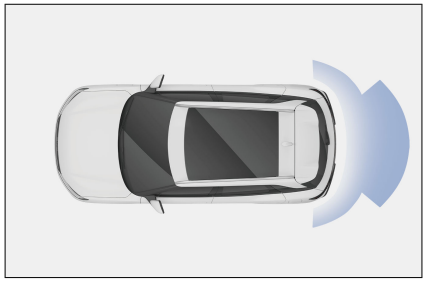
- The system has a blind spot range of 0–200 mm with reduced detection accuracy and less precise alerts. Alerts within 0–200 mm are for reference only.

Working Sensors and Detection Range

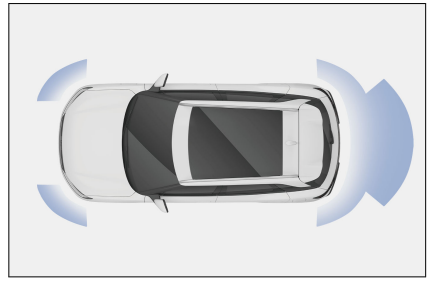
All sensors are activated upon reversing.

The illustration shows the sensors' detection range. Sensors have a range limitation, so drivers must check the surroundings before slowly reversing the vehicle.

Configuration 1



Configuration 2



REMINDER

- The parking assist system is only for assistance, and is not a substitute for personal judgment. Be sure to operate the vehicle based on your observations.
- Sensors will not work properly if accessories or other objects are placed within their detection range.
- In some cases, the system cannot operate properly and will fail to detect certain objects as the vehicle approaches them. Therefore, be sure to observe the vehicle's surroundings at all times. Do not rely solely upon the system.
- Failure of the parking radar system * is indicated by a message on the instrument cluster and a beep. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.

Sensor Detection Information

- Certain vehicle conditions and surroundings may affect the sensors' ability to accurately detect obstacles. Detection accuracy may be affected if:
  - There is dirt, water or fog on the sensor.
  - There is snow or frost on the sensor.
  - The sensor is masked in any way.
  - The vehicle leans significantly to one side or is overloaded.
  - The vehicle is moving on particularly bumpy roads, slopes, gravel or grass.
  - The sensor has been repainted.
  - The vicinity is noisy due to honking of vehicles, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other noises that produce ultrasonic waves.
  - There's another vehicle with parking assist system nearby.
  - The vehicle is fitted with a tow eye.
  - The bumper or the sensor was hit hard.
  - The vehicle is approaching a high or zigzag curb.
  - The vehicle is driving in the sun or in the cold.
  - The vehicle is fitted with non-original, lower suspension.
- Except as described above, sensors may not be able to correctly determine the actual distance due to the shape of the object.
- The shape and material of obstacles may prevent sensors from detecting them, especially the following:
  - Electric wires, fences, and ropes
  - Cotton, snow, and other materials that absorb radio waves
  - Any object with sharp edges and corners
  - Low obstacles
  - High obstacles facing outwards towards the vehicle
  - Any object under the bumper
  - Any object close to the vehicle
  - Persons near the vehicle (depending on the type of clothing)
- If an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen* or there is a beep, it may be that the sensor detects an obstacle or is interfered. If the issue persists, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

CAUTION

- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not wash the sensor area with water or steam.

Driving Safety Systems

For better driving safety, the following driving safety systems works automatically based on driving conditions. However, these systems only provide assistance, and excessive reliance on them is not recommended.

Intelligent Power Braking System

- The intelligent power braking system is an advanced decoupled electro-hydraulic braking system, incorporating vacuum booster, electronic vacuum pump, and ABS/ESC functionality.
- The system assists vehicle braking according to the driver's demands and

improves vehicle stability, comfort, and the recovery efficiency of brake energy.

Vehicle dynamics control (VDC)

When the vehicle turns suddenly while driving, if the vehicle swerves from the driver's normal lane, the VDC will correct the situation by engaging brakes to the corresponding wheels to help the driver control skidding and maintain directional stability.

Traction control system (TCS)

TCS prevents the drive wheels from skidding during acceleration by reducing the motor power, and, when necessary, applies braking forces to prevent drive wheels from spinning. It makes it easier for the vehicle to start, accelerate, and climb under adverse driving conditions.

WARNING

- TCS may not work effectively in the following situations:
  - On slippery roads, even if TCS is working properly, it may not be able to control the direction and meet power requirements.
  - Do not drive in conditions where the vehicle may lose its stability and power.

Hill hold control (HHC)

After the brake pedal is released, HHC maintains brake pressure for one second to prevent backward sliding.

Hydraulic brake assist (HBA)

When the brake pedal is pressed quickly, HBA recognizes that the vehicle is in emergency mode and actively improves the brake pressure. This allows ABS to intervene more quickly, effectively shortening the brake distance.

Controlled deceleration for parking brake (CDP)

When "P" button is pressed and held, CDP starts to work and the vehicle brakes at a constant deceleration until the vehicle comes to a stop. If the driver releases "P" button, CDP stops functioning.

Hill descent control (HDC)

- HDC is a value-added function of the ESC system to improve vehicle comfort, The main function of HDC is to assist in downhill slow driving through active braking.
- To enable or disable HDC:
  - When the speed is below 38 km/h, you can also enable HDC by pressing the HDC switch. When the function is enabled, its status indicator on the instrument cluster is steady on.
  - Press the HDC switch again to disable the function, and the indicator on the instrument cluster turns off. HDC also automatically stops when the speed exceeds about 65 km/h.
- HDC speed control:
  - HDC works at speeds between 11 km/h and 38 km/h, within which you can adjust the speed by pressing/releasing the accelerator or brake pedal. The vehicle speed is set when the accelerator or brake pedal is released. The HDC status indicator flashes to indicate that the HDC is working.
- HDC malfunction:
  - In some special conditions, such as at a long stretch of downhill, the HDC function may be temporarily unavailable due to high brake temperature.

Intelligent power braking system has the following new functions compared with the original ESC system:

- Brake assist mode
  - The brake assist mode is used to adjust the brake pedal feel. The relation curve between the brake pedal depth and the vehicle deceleration varies across different modes for the driver to choose their preferred pedal feel.
  - You can set Comfort or Sport pedal feel on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Vehicle** → **Driving Control**. → **Brake Assist Mode**.
- Comfort parking
  - When the vehicle decelerates to stop in a non-emergency situation, the intelligent power braking system reduces the stop-instant suspension pitch and impact by controlling the brake pressure of the four brakes, providing a smooth stop feeling for the driver.
  - Enable or disable this function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Vehicle** → **Driving Control**.
  - This feature may increase the braking distance by 2–5 cm. Aim a longer distance from the vehicle or obstacle ahead accordingly before stopping your vehicle.
- Brake disc wiping
  - When the wiper switch is on, the intelligent power braking system applies a small brake pressure to all four brakes so that pads come into contact with discs to remove the water film from the discs. This shortens brake response time and braking distance.
  - As long as the system detects rain or the wiper ON signal, the brake discs are repeatedly wiped at certain intervals to improve safety.

ESC operation instructions

- ESC working
  - If there is a risk of skidding or backsliding when the vehicle starts on a slope, or if either drive wheel is spinning, the ESC indicator flashes to indicate that ESC system is working.
- Disabling ESC
  - If the vehicle gets stuck in snow or mud, ESC may reduce power output from the motor to the wheels, where the system should be turned off to get out of the jam.
- Turning off ESC
  - To turn off the ESC system, press the physical button or go to the infotainment system. ESC also checks its operating status in real time. If the ESC OFF switch is pressed while ESC is working, it completes the active intervention control this time rather than executes the "OFF" command immediately. ESC is disabled only after the intervention control is complete.
  - Some ESC functions may be re-enabled if you press the ESC OFF switch again or the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold of 80 km/h. ESC may be re-enabled only if the ESC is not in a vehicle dynamic intervention state.
- ESC OFF switch mis-operation*
  - ESC is considered to be mis-operated if the ESC OFF switch is pressed and held for more than 10 seconds. In that case, all internal ESC functions continue to work.
- Restarting ESC after the motor is powered off
  - When the ESC system has been turned off, restarting the motor will automatically restart ESC system.
- ESC start and speed linkage

- Although already turned off, the ESC system can start on its own if the vehicle becomes extremely unstable as the speed increases and exceeds the threshold of 80 km/h.

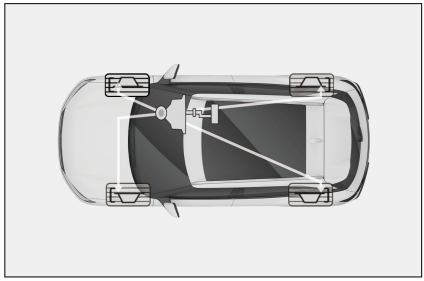
- With ESC system activated
  - If the ESC fault indicator flashes, drive with caution.
- With ESC system disabled
  - Be careful when ESC is disabled, and drive at speeds suitable for road conditions. The ESC system ensures vehicle stability and its driving force. Never turn it off unless necessary.
- Replacing tires
  - Make sure all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern, and total load. In addition, be sure to inflate tires to the recommended pressure.
  - Neither ABS nor ESC will work properly if the vehicle is fitted with different tires.
  - For details on tire or wheel replacement, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Tire and suspension handling
  - The use of any defective tire or modified suspension affects the driving safety system and may cause the system to fail.

Multi-collision braking (MCB)*

- If an accident requires airbags activation, the vehicle engages automatic braking.
- Speed reduction, along with intervention by additional driving systems (ESC and ABS), assists the vehicle to maintain stability and lane position.
- Hazard and brake lights also light up to alert oncoming traffic and prevent further collisions.
- To support emergency service rescue and vehicle recovery, brakes will release and brake lights will go off after the accident.
- The driver can interrupt the multi-collision braking at any time by accelerating or braking.

Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)

- The ABS hydraulic system has two separate circuits. Each circuit runs diagonally through the vehicle (the left front wheel brake is connected to the right rear wheel brake). If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked.
- ABS helps maintain steering control by preventing the wheels from locking or skidding when brake is engaged suddenly or on slippery roads.



- When the ABS is working, the ESC indicator will flash and the brake pedal will vibrate, which may produce noise. This is because the ABS is pulsating the brake quickly, which is normal. In this situation, you should press and hold the brake pedal instead of pumping the brakes. This allows ABS to function as designed. While steering away from danger, a firm and steady pressure should always be maintained on the brake pedal for the ABS to work.

WARNING

- ABS cannot work effectively under the following conditions:
  - Tires with inadequate grip are used (for example, excessively worn tires used on snow-covered roads).
  - The vehicle skids when driving at a high speed on slippery roads.
- ABS is not designed to reduce the braking distance of the vehicle. Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead when:
  - Driving on slippery, muddy, sandy or snowy roads.
  - Driving on roads with multiple potholes or on uneven roads.
  - Bumpy roads.

CAUTION

- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the braking system warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.
- ABS does not reduce the time and distance required to stop the vehicle. This device only helps you control steering when braking. Please always keep a safe distance from other vehicles.
- ABS cannot prevent skidding caused by sudden direction change, such as trying to make a sharp turn or change lanes suddenly. Always drive carefully at a safe speed, regardless of road and weather conditions.
- ABS does not prevent decrease in stability either. When applying the brake in an emergency, the steering should be moderate. A large or sharp turn during the driving can cause the vehicle to swerve into oncoming traffic or run off the road.
- When driving on wet or soft or uneven roads (such as waterlogged concrete roads, waterlogged epoxy painted roads, sandy roads, snowy roads), vehicles equipped with ABS may require longer braking distances than vehicles without ABS. In such cases, reduce the vehicle speed and keep a greater distance from other vehicles.

05 IN-VEHICLE DEVICES

Infotainment System.....172
A/C System.....180
BYD App.....184
Storage.....186
Other Devices.....187

Infotainment System

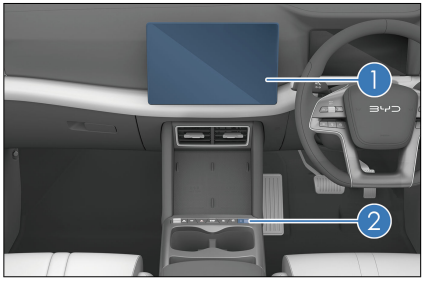
Infotainment Touchscreen

When the ignition is on, the initial screen is displayed for several seconds and the infotainment system starts to work. To better experience infotainment functions, such as intelligent voice control*, Apps and video call, the system must be used after network connection.

When the infotainment system is started for the first time, a warning message will appear. Tap **Agree** to enter the system.

① Infotainment touchscreen

② Scroll button



Factory reset

- The infotainment system can be reset to the factory settings by tapping ⚙ → **System** → **Version**→ **Factory Reset**→ **Reset**.
- This function factory resets the infotainment system.
  - During the process, do not touch any infotainment button or turn off the power supply, or errors may occur.
  - The process takes two to five minutes.

WARNING

- Do not use a high-power inverter in the vehicle, as this may cause infotainment system malfunction.
- Do not format or root the device, as this may cause infotainment system or vehicle malfunction.

CAUTION

- To prevent damage to the touchscreen:
  - Touch the screen gently. If there is no response, remove fingers from the screen, then touch it again.
  - Clean the screen with a soft cloth. Do not use any cleaning product.
- Using the touchscreen
  - When the screen temperature is low, the image displayed may be darker or the system may work slightly slower than normal.
  - The screen may be dark or difficult to see when you are wearing sunglasses. In that case, change the viewing angle or take off the sunglasses.
  - Touchscreen buttons that are grayed out cannot be operated.
- The touchscreen interface shown here is for reference only.
- To better experience infotainment functions, such as intelligent voice control*, Apps and video call, the system must be used after network connection.
- It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in the event of a failure.

Navigation Bar

: returns to the previous page or exits the program.

: returns to the homepage.

: goes to vehicle setting screen.

: goes to the A/C screen.

: enables screen saver.

REMINDER

- The shortcut menu on your vehicle may be different.

Gestures and Responses

Gestures to interact with the system include:

- Tapping: opens an application, selects a function, clicks an icon on the touchscreen, or types with the onscreen keyboard.
- Dragging: re-positions an icon, thumbnail, or preview. Drop when you reach the intended position.
- Swiping: is operational on homepage and app screens.
- Double-tapping: zooms in an image. Double-tap again to return.
- Spreading/Pinching: zooms in/out an image.
- Swiping down from the top of the touchscreen: opens the shortcut menu.

OTA Update*

- The vehicle supports over-the-air (OTA) updates. When available, new updates are prompted on the infotainment touchscreen. You can update your software to the latest immediately or schedule an update through infotainment touchscreen or BYD App based on your vehicle usage.
  - To update through infotainment touchscreen, tap → → **System** → **Version**.
  - To update through BYD App, navigate to BYD App → App homepage→ System update.

CAUTION

- Before the update, ensure that the vehicle is parked safely in Park gear with network connection successfully established.
- Make sure the vehicle has enough battery power before the update, as it cannot be charged or discharged during the process.
- Do not install any third-party devices in the on-board diagnostics port before or during the update.
- During the OTA upgrade, all functions are not available except the unlocking/locking, interior lights, hazard warning light, and window controls.
- If the OTA upgrade fails, try it again. If it continues to fails, contact the official customer service or a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for handling.
- If the OTA upgrade fails, and the fault warning lights such as the parking system fault warning

CAUTION

light, ABS fault warning light and ESC fault warning light are on at the same time, Do not drive the vehicle and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible to check the vehicle status.

REMINDER

- Upgrade paths may vary from the actual ones on the infotainment touchscreen and App. The actual paths shall prevail.
- Some functions may change after OTA update. Check the latest version number for update descriptions.

BYD Assistant*

BYD Assistant is an intelligent voice assistant that responds to your voice commands, such as requesting navigation, playing music/radio, making a phone call, and controlling in-vehicle devices.

- Waking up BYD Assistant:
  - On the steering wheel, press the button.
  - On the infotainment touchscreen, tap .
  - Say the wake-up word: "Hi, BYD."
- After system wake-up, give voice commands according to tips on the infotainment touchscreen.

Bluetooth

Connection

1. On Bluetooth Call screen, tap **Please connect Bluetooth** to establish connection.
2. Tap **Scan for device** to search for available devices.
3. Pair the available device, and make sure the paring code displayed on your phone is consistent with the code on the touchscreen.
4. Set Bluetooth when connection is complete.

Bluetooth Call

Go to the dialing screen when Bluetooth is connected.

- Tap **Contacts**, **Call log**, and **Missed calls**, or use dial keypad to make a call.
- Tap to zoom in or out the dialing screen.
- Tap to display or hide the dial keypad.
- In panoramic view screen, a small window pops up to inform driver of a call.

File Management

New folder

- Go to file management screen to create new folders. You can enter the folder name, and tap **OK** or **Cancel** to perform actions.
- Tap the top of the file management screen to change file sources.

Search

- Tap **Search** on the upper left corner and enter file names to search for target files.

Cut/Copy

- Touch and hold any file, select target files and operation (Copy, Move and Delete), and then go to the edit status.

Rename

- Touch and hold any file, select **Rename** in dialog displayed, rename the selected file, and then tap **OK**.

Delete

- Touch and hold any file, select files, and then tap **Delete**.

Sort

- Files are sorted by name by default. You can also sort them by size, type, or time.

Attributes

- Touch and hold any file, select a file, and then tap **Details** to check its attributes.

Phone Projection*

Phone projection* allows you to connect a smartphone to the vehicle and interact with certain mobile apps on the infotainment touchscreen.

WARNING

- Drive safely. Avoid any possible distractions, or accidents could result.

REMINDER

- Make sure the vehicle is in Park with the infotainment system turned on, and allow time to set up the phone projection app before you start your drive.
- The initial setup process is to be completed on the phone or the infotainment touchscreen: check prompts on the phone for security information, accept privacy policies, and grant necessary permissions.
- Wired connections require a connection between a certified USB cable to the USB data transfer port on the vehicle.
- When connecting wirelessly, pair your phone and the vehicle via Bluetooth. It is better to keep your phone's Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and Location Services turned on in this process.
- For the connection to be stable, it is better to change the vehicle hotspot name to avoid name-related issues.
- Ensure your phone is in range of your mobile data network and has an active data plan.
- Availability of services shown varies by country and language, and subscriptions for services may be required.

Apple CarPlay

Connecting with a cable

- **To activate the connection,** plug an iPhone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable. Apple CarPlay is then connected. The phone projected is shown on the device list.
- **To deactivate the connection,** unplug the iPhone USB cable to stop Apple CarPlay. If you have chosen to enable wireless CarPlay, the phone and the vehicle pair automatically to allow for future wireless connections.

Connecting wirelessly*

- **To activate the connection,** do as follows.

  1. Go to infotainment touchscreen → application screen, tap the Apple CarPlay icon , and pair your iPhone to the vehicle as prompted.
  2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Apple CarPlay.

- **To deactivate the connection,** choose any of the following ways.
  - On the vehicle, turn off the vehicle hotspot.
  - Turn on vehicle Wi-Fi to let the vehicle hotspot off.
  - In the connected device list, tap **Delete** or **Disconnect** to disconnect the current device.
  - In the Bluetooth list, delete the device projected.
  - Connect the Bluetooth of the current device.
  - Turn off the vehicle.
  - On your phone, delete this CarPlay device.
  - Turn off your phone Wi-Fi.

REMINDER

- Note that stopping the current connection will not have other CarPlay devices connected automatically.

Reconnecting Apple CarPlay

- Disconnected wired Apple CarPlay will not automatically restore. You have to unplug and replug the USB cable for this purpose.
- Wireless Apple CarPlay, if abnormally disconnected, automatically try to reconnect.

Switching between Apple CarPlay and built-in infotainment system

- To exit Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the BYD icon on Apple CarPlay's home screen.
- To access the Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the Apple CarPlay icon on the built-in infotainment system's application screen.
- When the connected device list has only one Apple CarPlay history, tapping the icon automatically activates the connection.
- When there are multiple device histories suitable for projection, tapping the Apple CarPlay icon navigates to the device list. Select the one you want to use.

Switching between devices

- Access the connected device list by tapping the connected device icon on the shortcut menu or by going to → **Connection** → **Connected Devices**.
- By using the list, you can only switch to a wireless device. This means you get a prompt if selecting another wireless device, but you will need to unplug and replug the USB cable to switch to a wired device.
- Connecting the USB port of the phone being connected wirelessly—which starts charging only—will not trigger the switching prompt, but connecting that of another phone will.

Possible issues

- **Checking your phone**
  - Use a phone that is in proper conditions. Apple CarPlay may often

freeze on older iPhone models or earlier iOS versions.

- A smooth cellular network is necessary. Sluggish network connections could cause apps to lag.
- Apple CarPlay may disconnect by signal interference in a complex network environment.

- **Checking connections with the vehicle**
  - For wired connections, be sure to use the data transfer port, and preferably a MFi-certified or genuine iPhone cable.
  - For wireless connections, verify your phone settings:
    - Bluetooth has been turned on.
    - Wi-Fi has been turned on and Auto-Join of the vehicle hotspot toggled on.
    - Wireless Carplay has been selected at the very first Apple CarPlay connection. In case you do not know, navigate on your iPhone to **Settings** → **General** → **Carplay**, select the vehicle you want to reset, then tap **Forget This Car**. Delete your iPhone from the device list on the vehicle. Then reset Apple CarPlay.
  - In the event of MFi authentication chip issue or reading error, delete histories and reconnect. If the issue persist, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
  - The name of the vehicle's Bluetooth or hotspot must be unique.
    - Search on your phone for nearby Bluetooth and hotspots. Make sure that no other devices have the same name as this vehicle to prevent interference.
    - You can change the vehicle Bluetooth or personal hotspot name in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **System** → **Link**.
  - Make sure Siri is on.
  - Make sure Apple CarPlay is not restricted.

    If your iPhone is not detected by Apple CarPlay, navigate on the phone to **Settings** → **Screen Time** → **Content & Privacy Restrictions**. If **Content & Privacy Restrictions** is on, tap **Allowed Apps & Features** to make sure that Apple CarPlay is enabled.
  - If Apple CarPlay is disconnected by turning the vehicle hotspot off, wireless reconnection cannot be performed within 10 minutes. Try after that.
  - You can restart by forgetting history settings:

    On your iPhone, navigate to **Settings** → **General** → **Carplay**, select the vehicle you want to reset, then tap **Forget This Car**. In the meantime, delete this phone from the vehicle's device list.
  - If the wireless connection fails after you end a wired connection by unplugging the USB cable, clear CarPlay device information on your iPhone or restart the phone.
- For available regions of Apple CarPlay, visit https://www.apple.com/ios/feature-availability/#apple-carplay.

Android Auto

Connecting with a cable

- **To activate the connection,** plug an Android Auto-compatible phone to one of the vehicle's USB data transfer port

with a certified USB cable and set up as prompted.

- **To deactivate the connection,** unplug the USB cable or. Alternatively, you can end the connection or delete the projected phone in **Connected Devices**.

  1. Plug a smartphone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable.
  2. Follow the on-screen instructions to set up Android Auto.

Connecting wirelessly

- **To activate the connection,** do as follows.

  1. On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the Android Auto icon , and pair your smartphone to the vehicle as prompted.
  2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Android Auto.

- **To deactivate the connection,** choose any of the following ways.
  - On the vehicle, turn off the vehicle hotspot.
  - Turn on vehicle Wi-Fi to let the vehicle hotspot off.
  - In the connected device list, tap **Delete** or **Disconnect** to disconnect the current device.
  - In the Bluetooth list, delete the device projected.
  - Turning Bluetooth on the vehicle or Wi-Fi on the phone off may stop projection.
  - Turn off the vehicle.
  - On your phone, delete this Android Auto device.

Reconnecting Apple CarPlay

- Disconnected wired Android Auto will not automatically restore. You have to unplug and replug the USB cable for this purpose.
- Wireless Android Auto, if abnormally disconnected, automatically try to reconnect.

Switching between Android Auto and in-vehicle infotainment system

- To exit Android Auto user interface, tap on Android Auto interface.
- To access Android Auto user interface, tap the Android Auto icon on the built-in infotainment system's application screen.
- When the connected device list has only one Android Auto history, tapping the icon automatically activates the connection. Connection prompts will be given if projection conditions are not met.
- When there are multiple device histories suitable for projection, tapping the Android Auto icon navigates to the device list. Select the one you want to use.

Switching between devices

- You can switch between wireless Android Auto devices in the connected device list and get a switching prompt after selecting another device.
- However, this step does not work for switching to a wired device, which requires unplugging and replugging the USB cable.
- Connecting the USB port of the phone being connected wirelessly—which starts charging only—will not trigger the switching prompt, but connecting that of another phone will.

Possible issues

- **Android Auto not working**

- Make sure your phone supports Google service.
- Check if the phone operation system supports Android Auto.
  - Common Android Auto compatible devices are Android phones running Android 11.0 or later versions. Consult your phone maker for compatibility.
  - Android Auto is not supported on phones running Android (Go edition).
- Verify that your phones has the latest version of Android Auto app.
  - Search for Android Auto in phone Settings, then go to the Android Auto screen to view the version.
  - If Android Auto cannot be found, search for it in Google Play to download or update.
- Check if the connection between your phone and the vehicle is working normally.
  - For wired connections, use a good USB cable to connect the phone and the data transfer port.
  - For wireless connections, make sure Bluetooth and Wi-Fi are turned on on your phone and so do the vehicle Bluetooth and hotspot.

- **Unable to reconnect Android Auto**

  Try the following steps:

  - If you are using a wired connection, change to a genuine USB cable of the phone.
  - For a wireless connection, change the vehicle hotspot name (→ **System** → **Link**) or turn off the Bluetooth and Wi-Fi on the phone and the vehicle, then turn them back on.
  - Restart your phone and the vehicle infotainment system.
  - Delete and reconnect your phone as follows:

    1. Forget previously connected devices on the phone: Go to your Android phone's settings, then navigate to or search for Android Auto settings (on Google phones for example, **Settings** → **Connected devices** → **Connection preferences** → **Android Auto**).
    2. Tap **Previously connected cars**, then the three-dot menu button, and select **Forget all cars**.
    3. On the vehicle infotainment touchscreen, go to → **System** → **Link** → **WLAN**, then delete the device you want to project from the **Connected Devices**.
    4. Delete your phone from **Bluetooth Settings**.
    5. Reactivate the connection between the phone and the vehicle.

- **Causes to unstable Android Auto connections**

  - For wired Android Auto, typical causes are:
    - Unstable data transmission due to low-quality USB cable
    - Data transmission failure of USB port on the side of the vehicle
    - Data transmission failure of USB port on the side of the phone
    - Unstable connections due to BC1.2 incompatibility of the vehicle USB port
    - Unstable connections due to an old version of Android Auto on the phone

- Strong vehicle vibration caused by rugged roads

- For wireless Android Auto, they include:
  - Hotspot turned off on the vehicle or Wi-Fi off on the phone
  - complex network environments or weak signals (for example, vehicle hotspot having to compete for frequency resources if various Wi-Fi creators are working concurrently)
  - Bad cellular reception (in a basement or forest, for example)
  - Too old version of Android Auto on the phone (the latest version recommend)
  - Many BYD vehicles nearby with identical hotspot names
  - Faulty or malfunctioning Bluetooth or Wi-Fi module on the phone or the vehicle

- **Apps not available on Android Auto**
  - Not all apps on your phone are compatible with Android Auto, so some of them may not be displayed on the user interface.
  - Mobile network influences app presence or usage on Android Auto. Some apps cannot be opened without mobile network connections.
  - Given the feature or permission differences of apps between Android Auto and the phone, please consult the app providers if you have questions on app usage.

REMINDER

- Android Auto is integrated into phones with Android 10 and above. You do not need to download it.
- For wired or wireless connection, your phone might ask you to update Android Auto before you continue.
- Android Auto connections require the use of Bluetooth on both your phone and the vehicle, which could disconnect other already connected Bluetooth devices.
- Wireless Android Auto connections reply on the use of Wi-Fi on your phone, which could interrupt Wi-Fi connections on your phone.
- Wireless Android Auto connections reply on the use of vehicle hotspot, which could interrupt Wi-Fi connections on the vehicle. If Wi-Fi remains needed, turn on Wi-Fi again and try to reconnect it. (Performance may vary across systems.)
- For Android Auto compatibility, visit Google website: http://www.android.com/auto/

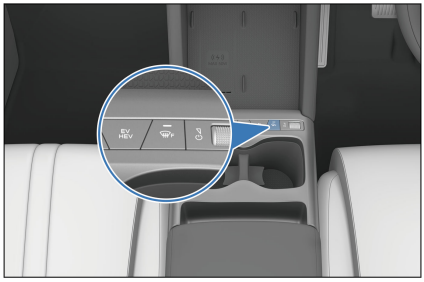
Trademark statement

- Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

A/C System

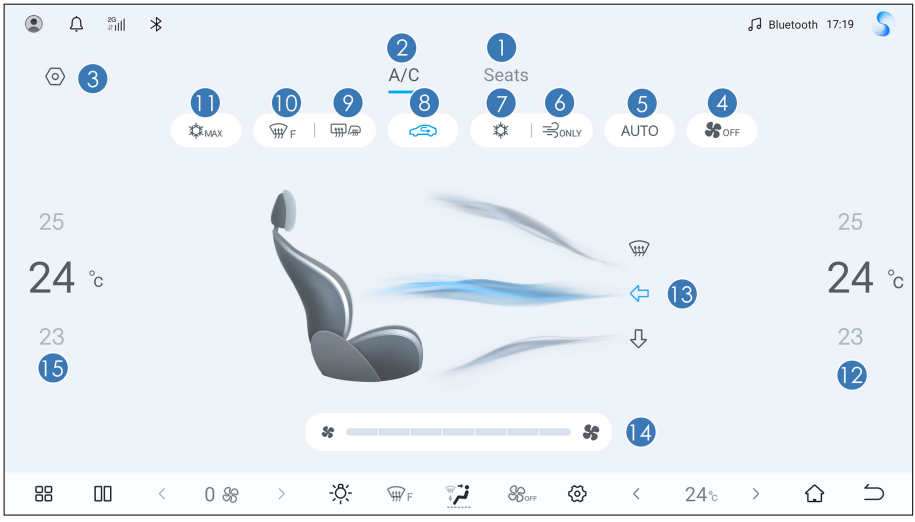
A/C Buttons

- Front windshield defroster



A/C Operation Interface

Front A/C Operation Interface



1	Seat operation interface*	9	Defroster for rear window & side mirrors*
2	A/C operation interface	10	Front windshield defroster
3	A/C settings	11	Max cooling
4	A/C ON/OFF	12	Driver's temperature control
5	Auto mode	13	Air distribution
6	Ventilation	14	Fan speed control
7	A/C button	15	Front passenger's temperature control
8	Circulation mode		

A/C Settings

- A/C Auto Mode
  - Two options are available: Economic and Comfort.
- Remote A/C Schedule

- Tap this button to set the time for remote A/C running.

- Auto internal circulation upon parking
  - Tap this button to enable this setting.
  - Tap this button a second time to disable it.
- Auto Fan Speed Reduction During Bluetooth Calls
  - Tap this button to enable this setting.
  - Tap this button a second time to disable it.

Function Definition

A/C ON/OFF

- Tap this button to disable the A/C if it is ON.
- Tap this button to enable the A/C if it is OFF.

Auto mode

- Tap the auto button, and its indicator lights up on the front A/C panel. The auto mode is activated with the fan speed and air distribution being adjusted automatically.
- The vehicle exits auto control if fan speed or air distribution is set, and other functions remain in auto mode except for those that have been operated.

A/C button (cooling/heating button)

- Tap this button to turn on the A/C (cooling/heating). The icon lights up and cooling or heating begins. Tap this button again to turn off the A/C compressor. The icon goes out and the compressor stops working.

Max cooling

- Tap this button to switch the A/C to the maximum cooling control mode. The compressor is turned on, the temperature is set to "Lo", the fan speed is set to the maximum, the recirculation mode is activated, and air is directed to face level. Tap this button again to deactivate A/C ventilation control and enter AUTO mode.

Front windshield defroster

- Tap this button to enter the front windshield defrost mode, distributing air to the front windshield. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel lights up.
- Tap this button again to deactivate and exit the front windshield defroster control mode. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel turns off.

Defroster for rear window & side mirrors*

- Tap this button, the electric heating elements inside the rear window and side mirrors will make the window and mirrors clear. The function is automatically deactivated after 15-minute inactivity of the associated button.
- Tap this button a second time to disable the function.
- This function is not to be used to dry raindrops or melt snow.

WARNING

- Do not touch the side mirrors when the rear defroster is activated, because their surfaces will be hot.
- When cleaning the inside of the rear windshield, do not scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

Ventilator

- Tap this button to activate A/C ventilation control. The outlet air is natural air, and the fan speed is 1 by default without cooling or heating.
- Tap this button again to exit.

Temperature controls

- Tap the upside arrow or slide it down to increase the temperature. Tap the downside arrow or slide it up to lower the temperature.
- "Lo"/"Hi" is displayed when the temperature is set to the lowest/ highest value.

Fan speed control

Tap the suitable blower speed level button to set the blower speed at a desired level. A higher blower speed level indicates a higher air volume.

Circulation mode

- Tap this button.  is displayed, and the circulation mode is recirculation.
- Tap this button for the second time.  is displayed, and the circulation mode is fresh air mode.

Blowing mode

- A/C blowing mode
  - Tap the corresponding icon on the infotainment system to select the corresponding blowing mode.
  - You can turn on multiple air distribution modes at a time (up to three).
- Adjustments can be made according to the air supply illustration.

 : Air flows to the face level.

 : Air flows to the foot level.

 : Air flows to the front windshield and side windows.

Usage Precautions

- To quickly cool down the interior after long exposure to sunlight, drive for a few minutes with the windows open to exhaust hot air and speed up A/C cooling.
- To speed up cooling, adjust the temperature to "Lo" and use the recirculation mode for a few minutes.
- If the A/C performance does not meet expectations, it is recommended to activate the AUTO mode. In this mode, the system automatically adjusts the temperature, air distribution, and fan speed to maintain passenger comfort.
- Make sure that the air intake grille in front of the windshield is not blocked by, for example, leaves or snow.
- Avoid blowing cool air onto the windshield in humid weather. The inner and outer temperature difference can cause glass fogging.
- Keep the space under the front seats clear to improve air circulation.
- In cold weather, run the fan at high speed for one minute to remove snow or moisture from the intake passage and reduce fogging.
- Use recirculation mode for a few minutes for quick heating in cold weather, and switch to fresh air mode to prevent fogging after cabin is heated up.
- In dusty or windy driving conditions, close all windows, switch on the recirculation mode, and turn on the A/C.
- In heating mode, press the compressor control button to light up the button

(turning on the compressor), which can reduce airflow moisture.

- In the ventilation mode, the system introduces the natural wind from the outside, which is suitable for spring and autumn.

REMINDER

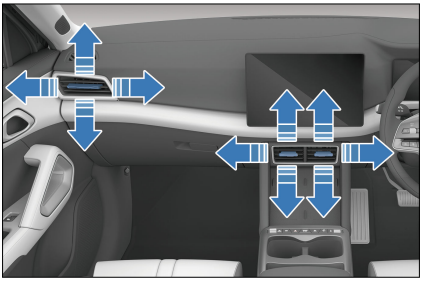
- A/C odor:
  - It is normal that there may be a damp or musty smell just after the A/C is turned on. This is because, during A/C operation, condensation tends to accumulate on the evaporator, which can easily absorb unfiltered substances such as body sweat and smoke inside the vehicle. The moisture on the evaporator surface provides a favorable environment for bacterial growth, which may lead to unpleasant odors over time.
- How to prevent A/C odors:
  - Turn off the A/C and ventilate with natural air before parking to keep the air inside the vehicle relatively dry.
  - Inspect, clean, or replace the filter regularly.
  - Keep the cabin clean and fresh.
- If the odor does not reduce after the above operations, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- To reduce A/C odors, if the A/C was on before the vehicle was powered off and locked, the A/C blower may automatically run for a while after locking. This is a normal condition designed to dry the condensation on the evaporator surface and prevent mold growth that can cause odors.

REMINDER

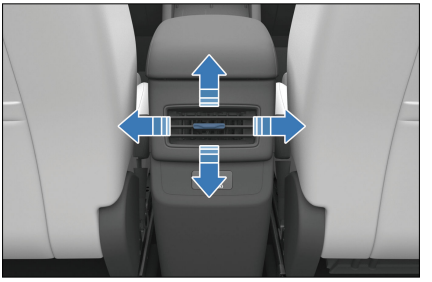
Front Center Vent

- Toggle the slat up or down to adjust the outlet angle of air flow.
- Slide the slat left or right to adjust the outlet angle of air flow or open/close the vent.

Front vents



Rear vents



BYD App

About BYD App*

- BYD app is a mobile application of Internet of Vehicle (IoV) independently

developed by BYD. It allows you to control the vehicle remotely and check vehicle conditions, delivering cloud era experience of IoV.

- You can search for "BYD" in application markets such as Google Play and App Store to download and install BYD app.

Account Registration*

Once the app is installed, follow the on-screen instructions or the steps below to sign up and log in.

1. Open the app, and then tap **Sign up** to go to the registration screen.
2. Enter email address registered in BYD authorized dealer, tap **Send email** to receive verification code, and then enter the code in app.
3. Set your password in password setting screen to complete the registration, and then the homepage is displayed.

CAUTION

- Provide the email address registered at the BYD authorized dealer, or registration will fail.
- In the app, select a country or region on upper right corner of the screen. The default setting depends on your phone setting. If it is not where you make the purchase, choose the right one, otherwise your data will not be accessible.

Vehicle Condition and Control*

The BYD App homepage provides information and control items of the vehicle.

- The homepage shows remaining driving range, SOC, vehicle error information, and status of vehicle driving, charging, A/C system, seat heater, seat ventilator, and tire pressure.
- Tap lock, unlock, light flashing & honking, or light flashing button to activate the corresponding function.
- Turn on or off A/C on the app homepage, or tap the A/C card to perform other settings.
- At the bottom of the homepage, tap the icon of seats, doors and windows, or tires to go to the associated screen and check their status.
- If you have multiple vehicles on an account, tap the vehicle name in the upper left corner of the screen to switch between vehicles.

CAUTION

- The control function of the app is mainly for remote use. To use this function, ensure your phone and vehicle are connected to the Internet.

Individual Center and Vehicle Management*

In BYD App screen, tap My Account to go to the individual center.

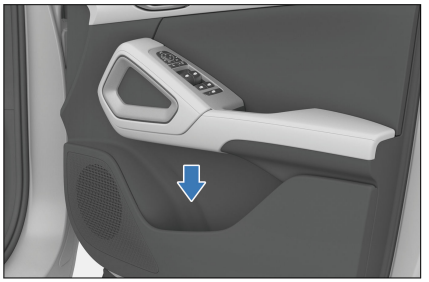
- Tap the icon on the top right corner of the vehicle card to edit the vehicle name and license plate number.
- Account and Security: recovers or changes your password.
- Settings: sets message reception, automatic login, and other items.

- About Us: includes privacy policy and information to contact us and give feedback.

Storage

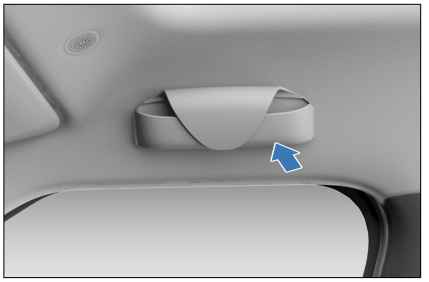
Door Bins

- There is a door bin on each door for storage of beverage bottles or small items.



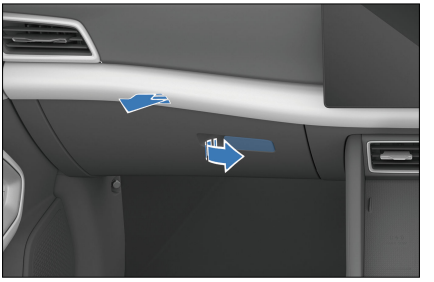
Eyeglass Case*

- The magnetic glasses case is located above the driver's seat.



Glove Box

- Tap the lid to open the glove box.
- Push the lid up to close it.



REMINDER

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the glove box closed while driving.

Center Console Cubby

- Pull up the lid of the center console cubby in the direction shown in the illustration to open it.
- Snap down the lid to close it.



REMINDER

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the center console cubby closed while driving.

Seatback Pockets

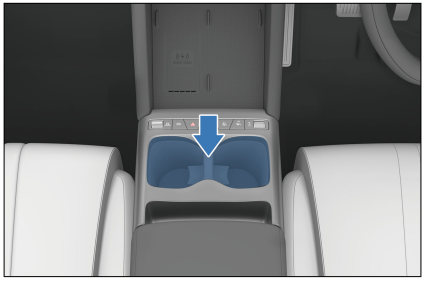
- There are seatback pockets at the back of the front seats for storing magazines, newspapers, or similar objects.



Cup Holders

Front Cup Holders

- The front cup holders are located in the center console.

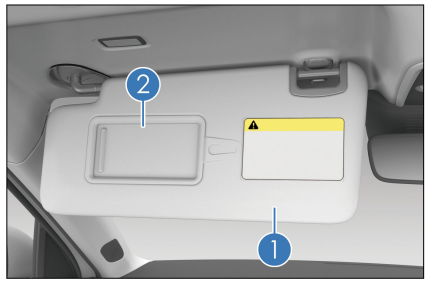


Other Devices

Sun Visor

① Sun visor

- To block sunlight from the front, pull the sun visor down.
- To block sunlight from a side, remove the swivel sleeve from the fixed support and turn the visor towards the side window.



② Vanity mirror

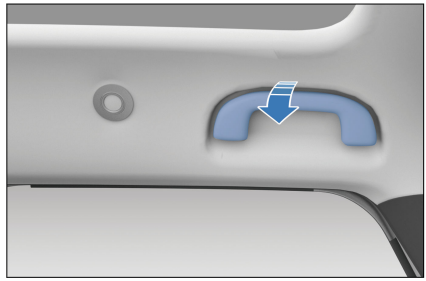
- Flip down the sun visor and slide the mirror cover for use.

REMINDER

- Correct use of the sun visor improves driving safety and comfort.

Grab Handles

- Pull the grab handle down for use. The handle returns to its original position when released.



CAUTION

- Do not hang any heavy objects from the grab handles.

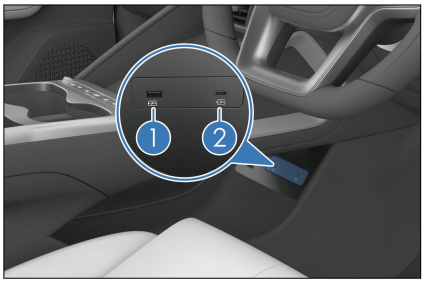
USB Ports

Front-Row USB Ports

- There are two ports installed in the lower layer of the auxiliary console.

① Type-A data transmission port

② Type-C charge port



- The ports can be used only when the ignition is on.
- The infotainment system is compatible with USB storage devices up to 128GB. It is not compatible with some USB devices on the market.

CAUTION

- It is recommended to use USB storage devices up to 128GB with FAT32 format.
- Do not use substandard or special USB storage devices to avoid damaging the infotainment system or data in the USB device.

Rear-Row USB Ports

- The rear USB ports are located behind the center console cubby.

① Type-A charge port

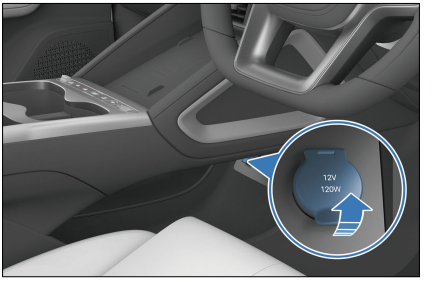
② Type-C charge port



- The USB ports can be used only when the ignition is on.

12 V Auxiliary Power

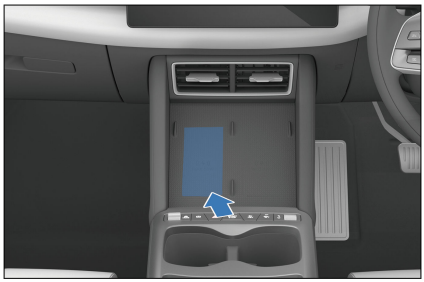
- The standby power supply can be used for accessories with a working current of less than 10 A and electrical power of less than 120 W.
- The 12 V auxiliary power supplies power to vehicle accessories.
- The 12 V auxiliary power is available only when the ignition is on. Lift the cover to use it.



Wireless Phone Charger*

- The mobile phone wireless charging area is located on the center console. To activate/deactivate wireless charging, tap the wireless charging icon on the shortcut page after sliding down the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen.

- After starting the vehicle, put the phone in the wireless charging area with the phone screen facing up. The phone automatically begins wireless charging, and a charging icon is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen.



- Wireless phone charging uses a coil to transmit electrical energy to a phone battery through electromagnetic wave induction so that the phone can be charged without a cable connection.

CAUTION

- To use the vehicle wireless charger, your phone must have wireless charging function.
- Ensure your smart key is more than 25 cm away from the wireless charger area when the wireless charger system is working.
- To avoid wireless charger dysfunction or even accidents, do not place coins, metal keys, metal rings, or other articles containing metal (for example, the metal phone case) in the wireless charger area together with the phone.
- To avoid damage to the charger area, do not place heavy objects on it.

CAUTION

- If the phone wireless charger system is faulty and does not work properly, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- BYD will not assume any responsibility for any problems caused by improper use. If the product is disassembled or modified, the free warranty will be terminated.
- For safety reasons, do not leave an unattended phone being charged in the vehicle.
- For safety reasons, refrain from checking phone charging status while driving.
- If a metal item is found between the device and the charger during charging, remove the mobile phone immediately and wait for the metal item to cool down before removing to prevent burning.
- While charging, align the bottom of the phone with the vents of the wireless charging area to ensure a better charging experience.
- Prevent any fluid from coming into contact with the charger area. The wireless charger will malfunction if water enters the wireless charger.
- Do not use flammable solvents such as oil, grease, or alcohol to clean the wireless charging area.
- Do not cover the wireless charging area with fabrics or objects while charging.

CAUTION

- Charging may stop at high temperatures, and will resume once the temperature drops.
- BYD makes no commitments for problems caused by external wireless charging coils (for example, magnetic charging coils). Please use with caution.
- To avoid burning cards with chips, such as NFC cards and bank cards, do not place them between the wireless charging area and the phone during charging.
- Before charging, placing an NFC-enabled phone on the NFC-integrated wireless charging area may activate the phone's digital wallet.
- When the ignition is switched on, activating the digital key will pause the phone's wireless charging. The wireless charging automatically resumes when activation is finished.

REMINDER

- Only one phone can be charged at a time.
- A phone case that is too thick may prevent charging.
- On bumpy roads, the wireless phone charging may intermittently stop and then resume.
- Try to ensure that the surface on which a mobile phone is placed is parallel to the charging module. If the phone moves from the wireless charger area and stops charging, move it back.

REMINDER

- If the phone cannot be charged properly, ensure that there are no foreign objects in the wireless charger area, or wait for the wireless charger area to cool down before trying again. If it is still impossible to charge the phone, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- After power-off, if the phone is still charging and a front door is opened, the message "Please take your cell phone with you" is on the instrument cluster.
- The setting icon for wireless phone charging can be added or removed on the shortcut page of the infotainment touchscreen.
- For the purpose of compatibility, the in-vehicle wireless fast charging* module may be slower than the original charger provided by your phone's manufacturer.
- The wireless fast charging* power of your phone depends on that supported by the phone, while the in-vehicle fast charging* only supports up to 50 W.
- Some phones may carry outdated charging programs that are not capable of fast charging*.

06 MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Precautions..... 192
Regular Maintenance.....197
Self-Maintenance.....203

Maintenance Precautions

Maintenance Cycle and Items

Maintenance Plan

- The maintenance plan is designed to ensure stable driving, failure reduction, safe and economical driving.
- The maintenance schedule lists all the maintenance items that are necessary to keep the vehicle in optimum running condition at all times.
- The items in the maintenance schedule are important and need to be maintained according to the time interval.
- Hoses with any degradation or damage should be replaced immediately. Rubber hoses (for systems such as cooling, heating, and braking systems) must be checked by professional technicians according to the maintenance schedule.

Maintenance Schedule Requirements

The vehicle must be maintained according to the regular maintenance schedule.

If the vehicle is operated primarily under one or more of the following special conditions, certain maintenance items may need to be performed more frequently.

- Road conditions
  - Muddy, sandy, or snowy roads.
  - Dusty roads
- Driving conditions
  - Use of towed trailer, camping trailer, or roof rack
  - Within 8 km, repeated short distances are driven and the outside temperature is below freezing.
  - Long idling and/or long distance driving at low speed, for example, using the vehicle as a police car, taxis or using it for transporting goods.

Maintenance Schedule

- First maintenance
  - Maintain your vehicle at six months or 3,500 km (HEV mileage) for the first maintenance, whichever comes first.
  - First maintenance items include vehicle basic maintenance, replacement of engine oil and oil filter, and check of engine idle speed and crankcase ventilation system.
- Routine maintenance:
  - Routine maintenance include vehicle basic maintenance, maintenance of other items, and engine maintenance.

Vehicle basic maintenance:

After the first maintenance, carry out the basic maintenance according to the following maintenance interval and mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Cooling pipe damage and connecting part tightness	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Brake friction block and disc	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Chassis screws	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Brake pedal and EPB switch	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Brake piping and hoses	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Steering wheel and tie rod	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Drive shaft boot	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Ball pin and boot	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Front and rear suspensions	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Front and rear wheel alignment	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Tire wear	Check during maintenance and rotate when necessary. In severe driving conditions, check more frequently and rotate when necessary.
Wheel bearing clearance	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Foreign materials on or ablation of the EPS GND point	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
EPS connector looseness and connector pin ablation	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
EPS ECU corrosion	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Foreign materials or corrosion on connections between the EPS ECU and motor	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Check the door brakes. Remove the dust from the lever with a damp soft cloth, and apply 0.3–0.8 g of grease to the lever, riveting joint, and rotating shaft	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Hood lock and fasteners	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Coolant level in expansion tank	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Brake fluid	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Vehicle module DTCs (to be cleared after recording)	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
High-voltage battery tray, crash bar, shield, crash valve*, thermal insulation cotton*, and mounting torque	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Powertrain leaks or bumps	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Fasteners of the high-voltage distribution box and similar parts	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance; In special or severe working conditions, check more frequently.
Loose high-voltage wiring harnesses or connectors and connector pin ablation	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance; In special or severe working conditions, check more frequently.
Deformation of or oil/fluid stains on the high-voltage module	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance; In special or severe working conditions, check more frequently.
Foreign materials on or ablation of charging connector interface	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance; In special or severe working conditions, check more frequently.
Wading marks on high-voltage parts	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance; In special or severe working conditions, check more frequently.
Vehicle module software update (update if any)	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Lamp and LED lighting	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Headlight dimming	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Initial down tilt of low beam	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
HEPA filter*	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance; in case of harsh environment or reduced air outlet, check in a timely manner and replace the A/C filter when necessary.
Lock nut torque of wiper arm	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Vehicle glass glue attachment	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Air leakage of exhaust pipe joint	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Bumps on the appearance of the three-way catalytic converter	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Fuel tank cap, fuel lines, and connections	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Charcoal canister	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance

Other item maintenance:

Comply with the following maintenance interval and mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Sealing of high-voltage battery pack	Test every two years or 40,000 km and replace the breather valve if necessary.
Engine coolant and drive motor coolant	Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every four years or 100,000 km.
Brake fluid	Check during maintenance and replace every two years or 40,000 km
EHS special gear oil	Check the amount of EHS gear oil during maintenance; replace the oil and the filter

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
	element assembly every four years or 60,000 km.
Transmission filter element	Replace the filter (press filter) element every four years or 60,000 km.

Engine maintenance:

Engine maintenance should comply with the following maintenance interval and mileage (HEV mileage), whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Engine oil and oil filter	Replace every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance
Crankcase ventilation system (PCV valve and ventilation hose)	Check every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance
Engine idle speed	Check every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance
Spark plug	Replace at 42 months or 33,500 km for the first time, and every 48 months or 40,000 km afterwards
Fuel filter	Replace every 120 months or 150,000 km.
Air filter element	Replace at 18 months or 13,500 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 20,000 km afterwards; Check under severe conditions of use and replace in advance if necessary

REMINDER

- A bottle (180 mL/bottle) of gasoline detergent should be added for the turbocharged engine each time after the first maintenance. Add gasoline detergent first and then fill up the fuel tank. Do not refuel or add gasoline detergent before the refueling prompt is displayed or the fuel indicator turns yellow on the instrument cluster.*

REMINDER

- To keep the high-voltage battery in optimal condition, fully charge and discharge the vehicle regularly (at least every six months or 72,000 km) for battery self-calibration. You can also contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for capacity testing and calibration.
- In following severe working conditions, it is recommended to shorten the routine mileage

REMINDER

interval based on the actual situations to protect the vehicle.

- The vehicle travels at low temperatures (ambient temperature <5°C) with short continuous driving time (less than 15 minutes) in HEV mode or often creeps (vehicle speed <10 km/h) for a long time.

Note:

- The maintenance intervals in the table are calculated starting from the purchase date.
- To keep the vehicle in the optimum state, follow the instructions below to operate the vehicle correctly.
  - Before the first maintenance, break in the vehicle in ECO mode with the use ratio of HEV mode not less than 50%.
  - After the first maintenance, the use ratio of HEV mode should not be less than 10%.
- The replacement time interval of the oil filter can be shortened according to the degree of fouling of the gasoline engine.
- Severe driving conditions refer to:
  - Frequent driving in dusty areas or frequent exposure to salt-laden air.
  - Frequent driving on bumpy, puddled, or mountain roads.
  - Driving in cold weather.
  - Frequent and sudden braking.
  - Frequent use of a towed trailer.
  - Used as a taxi.
  - Driving in congested urban areas at temperatures above 32°C for more than 50% of total travel time.
  - Driving at speeds over 120 km/h at temperatures above 30°C for more than 50% of total travel time.
  - Frequent overloading.

Regular Maintenance

Regular Maintenance

- Be sure to maintain the vehicle as per the maintenance schedule to allow it serve in the best working efficiency and reduce fault occurrence.
- Drivers can refer to the maintenance plan for scheduled maintenance intervals, depending on the odometer reading or time interval, whichever comes first.
- For overdue maintenance items, the same time interval should be used for maintenance.
- It is recommended that maintenance be performed in accordance with the standards and specifications of BYD, and by a local BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The maintenance schedule lists the maintenance items and travel time or distance based on the assumption that the vehicle is used as a normal means of transportation to carry passengers and goods and and is not driven with the load over maximum.

CAUTION

- Please maintain the vehicle regularly according to the

CAUTION

requirements in the Warranty and Maintenance Service Manual of BYD.

Vehicle Servicing

- Pay attention to vehicle performance, sound changes, and visual evidence that indicates service is required. Under any of the following circumstances, the vehicle may need to be checked or repaired, and it is recommended to send the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible:
  - Motor start produces unusual noises.
  - Coolant remains overheated, is stagnated or leaks.
  - Motor jams and produces unexpected noise.
  - The motor runs with excessive vibration.
  - The motor fails to get started.
  - Electric assembly leaks oil.
  - Electric assembly emits odors.
  - Power declines significantly.
  - Water leaks from under the vehicle (A/C condensate is normal).
  - Tire deflates; tires make excessive noises at turns; tire wear is uneven.
  - Vehicle leads to one side when driving straight on a flat surface.
  - Suspension unit movement leads to unusual noises.
  - Loss of braking effect; sponge feeling on the brake pedal; pedal almost contacts the floor; vehicle leads to one side when braking.
  - Motor coolant temperature remains high.
  - Battery capacity decreases significantly.
  - High battery temperature or overheat protection persists, or there is no power output.
  - "Please check the engine system" is displayed on the instrument cluster.
  - There is obvious abnormal vibration or noise in the engine compartment.
  - The engine leaks oil or water.
  - The vehicle exhausts blue smoke or thick black smoke.
  - A/C system fails to blow cold or hot air during refrigeration or heating.

WARNING

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injuries.

Vehicle Corrosion Prevention

The most common causes of vehicle corrosion are:

- The underbody of the vehicle is covered in salt, dust, or moisture.
- The vehicle or some of its parts are exposed to high humidity and high temperature for a long time.
- The paint layer or underlayer is scratched by minor collision or by stones and gravel.

The following rules should be observed to prevent vehicle corrosion:

- Wash the vehicle frequently.

- If driving on saline roads in winter or living in coastal areas, wash the landing area of the vehicle at least once a month, and clean the chassis and hubcap with a high-pressure water jet or steam to reduce corrosion. Wash the chassis thoroughly after winter.

- Check vehicle paint and trims.
  - Any chip or crack found on the paint must be repaired immediately to prevent corrosion. If fragments or cracks peel off from the metal surface, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.
- Check cabin interior.
  - Moisture and dust buildup under the carpet can cause corrosion. Check the undersides of carpets frequently to make sure these areas are dry.
  - Special care should be taken when the vehicle is transporting chemicals, detergents, fertilizers, salt, and other substances. Such substances should be kept in appropriate containers for transportation. If spillage or leakage is found, clean immediately and keep dry.
- Use fenders.
  - Fenders protect vehicles in saline areas or on gravel roads. The bigger and closer to the ground the fender, the better.
- Park in a well-ventilated and dry area.

Paint Maintenance Tips

- Clean the vehicle in time.
- Do not perform secondary painting if there are no obvious scratches on the finish, so as to prevent mismatch or color incompatibility.
- When the vehicle is not used for a long period, it should be parked in a garage or a well-ventilated place, and special body cover should be used in winter. Choose a shady place for parking temporarily.
- Prevent strong impacts, knocks, or scratches on the paint. If the paint is scratched, dented or if it peels, it should be repaired in time, preferably by professional auto beauty provider.
- Do not touch the paint with a greasy hand or cloth. Do not place greasy tools or rub with organic solvents on the vehicle body so as to avoid chemical reactions.
- The vehicle must be waxed once a month or whenever water resistance performance of the vehicle degrades and be taken to an auto beauty provider for maintenance once every three months.
- High quality polish and wax must be used. If body finish is severely weathered, use a car cleaning polish in addition to the wax. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions. Chrome finish should be polished and waxed as well as painted finish.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is repainted and placed in a high-temperature paint waxing workshop, the vehicle's plastic bumper must be removed to avoid damage caused by high temperatures.

Exterior Cleaning

- The vehicle must be cleaned in time under the following circumstances, which can cause peeling of paint layer

or corrosion of the vehicle body and parts:

- Driving along the coast.
- Driving on a road with anti-freeze.
- Driving on roads covered with coal tar.
- Resin, bird droppings, or insect carcasses are stuck on the vehicle.
- Driving in areas with a large amount of smoke, soot, dust, iron filings, or chemicals.
- The vehicle is visibly soiled by dust or mud.
- After raining.

CAUTION

- Do not open the access panels to clean the interior.
- Do not wash the vehicle in hot and direct sunlight conditions.

Manual Vehicle Washing

Before washing the vehicle, park it in the shade, and wait for the vehicle to cool down sufficiently.

- Hose off loose dirt, including all mud or road salts at the bottom of the vehicle and on wheel pits.
- Wash the vehicle with neutral agents, the mixing of which should be carried out according to the manufacturer's instructions. Soak a soft cloth with cleaning solution and gently wipe it down along the direction of the water flow. Do not wipe in a circular motion or horizontally.
- Rinse well—Dried washing agent forms markings. After washing the vehicle in hot weather, rinse all parts properly.
- Dry the vehicle with a clean soft towel to prevent stay water marks. In order to prevent scratching, do not rub or apply excessive force on the paint.

Washing vehicle with high-pressure washer

- When using high-pressure washer to wash the vehicle, follow the instructions:
  - The distance between the high-pressure water jet nozzle and the vehicle surface being cleaned should be greater than 30 cm.
  - The recommended pressure for the high-pressure water jet is less than 60 bar, and the maximum pressure is up to 100 bar.
  - Use a fan-shaped or mist spray pattern when cleaning with a water jet. Do not use a direct high-pressure jet.
  - Keep the nozzle in constant motion during rinsing. Avoid staying stationary in one spot.

CAUTION

- Comply with the above instructions during washing, as failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle and its components.
- Do not aim them directly at the sealing strips, to prevent high pressure from distorting even damaging the strips and water from leaking into the vehicle.

REMINDER

- Do not use any alkaline washing powder, soapy water, detergents, de-waxing detergents or volatile

REMINDER

substance (gasoline, kerosene, or solvent).

- When cleaning the lights, avoid using alcohol-based products (like alcohol and windshield washer fluid), ketones (such as lacquer thinner and insect remover), or other chemical solvents (including gasoline, thinner, and carbon tetrachloride), as these can cause the light casings to crack.
- It is recommended that vehicles traveling in coastal or heavily polluted areas be washed once a day.
- Do not use blades or gasoline to remove hard dirt from the vehicle body. The plastic wheel trim is easily damaged by organic matter. If any organic matter splashes on the vehicle trim, remove it with water and check whether the trim is damaged. Replace any seriously damaged plastic wheel trim in a timely manner. Otherwise, the trim may fall from the wheel during vehicle movement and cause an accident.
- Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to scrub the bumper.
- Clean polished metal parts with carbon cleaner and wax them regularly for protection.
- Be careful when cleaning the chassis to avoid cutting hands.

Automatic Vehicle Washing

When choosing an automated car wash service, be aware of certain types of brushes, unfiltered rinsing water, or machine-specific rinsing procedures that may scratch the paint and affect its gloss and durability, especially darker colors. Before washing the vehicle, consulting the service provider or check equipment instructions to understand which washing procedures are the safest for the paint finish.

CAUTION

- Disabling AVH function before using the automated wash equipment to wash the vehicle.
- Folding side mirrors before washing the vehicle. Unfolding side mirrors before driving.

Interior Cleaning

REMINDER

- Prevent direct water splash onto the dashboard or floor when washing the vehicle, as these may cause electrical faults.
- Do not wash the vehicle's floor to prevent corrosion.

Carpet

- Vacuum the carpet regularly.
- Clean the carpet regularly by scrubbing in a circular motion with a sponge or soft brush soaked in the suitable foaming detergent.
- Do not dilute the foam detergent and keep the carpet as dry as possible.

Seat Belts

- The seat belts can be cleaned with neutral soapy water or lukewarm water.

- Scrub the seat belts with a sponge or soft cloth. Check the seat belts for excessive wear, tear, or cut marks.

CAUTION

- Do not clean the seat belt with colorant or bleach. These substances may decrease the seat belt's strength.
- Do not use any seat belt that is not dry.

Doors and Windows

- Doors and windows can be cleaned with any ordinary detergent.
- Check the door brakes regularly. If a door brake lever is found with visible dust accumulation, wipe it with a wet soft cloth.

CAUTION

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windows, take care not to scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

A/C Control Panel, Car Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel and Switches

- Clean the A/C control panel, car speakers, dashboard, control panel and switches with a wet soft cloth.
- Wipe dust off gently with a clean soft cloth soaked in lukewarm water.

CAUTION

- Do not use organic substances (for example, solvents, kerosene, alcohol, and gasoline) or acid or alkali solutions. These chemicals can cause discoloration, staining, or flaking.

CAUTION

- Please confirm that the detergent or polishing agent to be used does not contain the above substances.
- If a new liquid washing agent is used, do not splash it onto the interior surface of the vehicle, because it may contain the above substances. If there is any spillage, immediately clean it thoroughly.

Leather

- Leather trimmings can be cleaned with a neutral detergent for woolen.
- Use a soft cloth with a neutral detergent solution to wipe off the dust, and then use a clean, wet cloth to wipe the remaining detergent thoroughly.
- If leather gets wet, wipe it with a clean soft cloth and air dry it in a cool, ventilated place.
- For any questions about vehicle cleaning, please consult a local BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If dirt cannot be cleaned off using a neutral detergent, clean it with a detergent that does not contain organic solvents.
- Do not clean leather with any organic material such as volatile oil, alcohol, gasoline, or acid-base solution, as these will cause discoloration.
- Do not clean leather with a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, as these may scratch the fine patterns on the leather surface.
- Mold may grow on dirty leather trimmings. Special care must be

CAUTION

taken to avoid oil stains, and trimmings must always be kept clean.

- Prolonged exposure to sunlight will cause leather to harden or shrink, so the vehicle should be parked in a shady and cool place, especially in the summer.
- In hot weather, the temperature inside the vehicle rises easily, so avoid placing vinyl or waxy items on the trimmings, as these may stick to leather in high temperatures.
- Improper cleaning of leather trimmings may cause discoloration or spots.

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance Precautions

- If maintenance is to be carried out by the owner, be sure to follow the correct steps specified in this section.
- Note that improper and incomplete maintenance will affect the performance of the vehicle.
- This section only lists instructions on simple maintenance items that can be done by the owner. However, there are many items that must be done by qualified technicians with special tools.
- Special care must be taken in maintaining vehicles to prevent accidental injuries. Make sure to obey the followings:

CAUTION

- Beware of short circuits, as some circuits and vehicle components carry high current or voltage.
- If coolant overflows, wipe it with a dry cloth or tissue to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint and add coolant in time.
- Only specified spark plug can be used. The use of other spark plug may result in engine performance loss or damage, or radio interference to other electric products.
- Do not reuse the spark plug by cleaning it or adjusting the spark plug gap.
- If brake fluid overflows, rinse it with water to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the air filter removed, otherwise, the engine will be excessively worn.
- When replacing wiper blades, do not allow the wipers to scratch the glass surface.
- Before closing the engine cover, check whether any tool or wipe cloth is left in the engine compartment.
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothes and tools at a certain distance from the rotating fan. It is recommended to take off the watch, ring, or tie.
- The engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and spark plug cover are hot after driving. Do not touch them and be careful to operate. The engine oil and other fluid may be hot too.

CAUTION

- To prevent burns, do not remove or loosen the expansion tank cap or remove the water pump, if the engine is very hot.
- Do not smoke in or near the vehicle to avoid sparks or open flames that may cause fire.
- Ensure the vehicle is turned off when working around the electric fan or radiator grill. If the engine coolant is hot or the A/C System is on with the vehicle powered on, the electric fan may automatically start.
- Whether working inside or under the vehicle, always wear goggles to prevent objects or liquids from falling into eyes.
- As brake fluid may damage the skin or eyes, be careful when filling it. If your skin or eyes are exposed to brake fluid, immediately flush with clean water. Seek medical attention immediately if discomfort persists.

Checks

The following items should be checked according to usage or specified mileage:

- Coolant level: Check the expansion tank coolant level at each charge.
- Windshield washer fluid: Check the residual amount of washer liquid in the tank monthly. When washer liquid is frequently used, check the residual amount more frequently.
- Windshield wiper: Check wiper conditions monthly. Check for wear, cracking, or other damage whenever the wiper cannot clean effectively.
- Brake fluid level: Check the level monthly.
- Brake pedal: Check whether the brake pedal is operating properly.
- EPB switch: Check whether the switch is functional.
- Low-voltage battery: Check battery conditions and check for terminal corrosion monthly.
- A/C system: Check the operation of A/C units weekly.
- Tires: Check tire pressure monthly. Check for tread wear and embedded foreign bodies as well.
- Windshield defrosters: Check the defroster vent every month when the heater or the A/C system is used.
- Lights: Check the condition of headlights, position lights, tail lights, high mount brake light, turn signals, rear fog lights, brake lights and license plate light monthly.
- Doors: Check whether the trunk lid and all other doors (including rear doors) can be opened freely and locked securely.
- Horn: Check whether the horn is functioning properly.

REMINDER

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

Combination Lights

Front combination lights

- Front combination lights are aligned before vehicle delivery. If the vehicle carries heavy load frequently, front combination lights may need to be

realigned. It is recommended to have the front combination lights aligned by a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Fogging of lights

- Combination lights, tail lights, and turn signals on the side mirrors may become foggy after heavy rain or cleaning. This is similar to condensation on the side window during rain. It does not mean any problem with your vehicle.
- The lights are a relatively enclosed and narrow space. The temperature is very high when they light up (the mask and reflector could be burned and deformed easily), so they need heat dissipation. There are heat dissipation holes on the lamp housing for convection. The greater the temperature difference is, the more active the convection is. During the convection, the moisture in the air inevitably enters a lamp. Factors such as exposure to sunlight, convection, and bulb heating can cause the moisture in the air to condense into fog or water beads easily on the lamp surface at low temperatures. This is called fogging of lights.
- If fog presents inside the combination lights and inside the turn signal on the side mirror, it may be due to high air humidity or significant temperature difference between the vehicle and its surroundings. In that case, turn on the combination lights or turn signal while driving. The fog will evaporate after a short period of driving.
- If there is a noticeable amount of water inside the lights, it is recommended to drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

Vehicle Storage

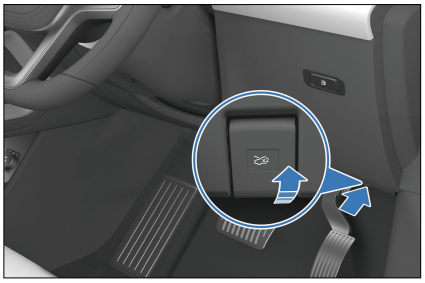
- If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time (more than a month), the following preparations should be made. Proper preparation helps prevent degradation and ensure easy use of the vehicle. If possible, park the vehicle indoors.
- Add fuel.
- Thoroughly clean and dry the body surface.
- Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure that carpets and mats are completely dry.
- Put the vehicle in Park.
- If the vehicle needs to be stored for a long time, jack up the vehicle body to keep the tires off the ground.
- Open one window slightly (if the vehicle is stored indoors).
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery.
- Pad the front wiper arm with a folded towel or cloth to keep it out of contact with the windshield.
- To reduce adhesion, apply silicone lubricant to all door and trunk lid seals and apply body wax to the painted surface where they contact the seals.
- Cover the vehicle body with a breathable covering made of a "porous material", such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, can build up moisture and damage the paint.
- If possible, start the engine for a while regularly (preferably once every month). If the vehicle has been parked for a year or more, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for comprehensive maintenance.

Hood

Opening and Closing the Hood

Open the hood

1. Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are pulled up, as this may damage the hood's paint.
2. Pull the handle on the right under the dashboard twice. The hood unlocks and opens slightly.



3. Lift up the hood and support it with the with a stay bar.



Close the hood

1. Remove the stay bar. Lower the hood to about 30 centimeters above the front grille and release it, so that the fall locks it. Do not press the hood with hands to close it.
2. After closing the hood, check whether the latch is securely locked. If the hood can still be lifted slightly, it indicates that it is not locked correctly. Open the hood again and then close it correctly according to the above steps.

WARNING

- When closing the hood, confirm that nobody is within the range of the falling hood.
- Ensure that the hood is closed and locked firmly before driving. If the hood is not closed properly, it may suddenly open during driving, resulting in accidents and personal injuries.
  - The correctly closed hood is level with the adjacent vehicle body.
  - If the hood is not closed tightly when driving, stop immediately and close the hood to prevent accidents.

CAUTION

- Do not press the front of the hood. Heavy pressure may damage the hood, causing dents in the surface or bending the edges.
- Do not force down the hood or release it from a high position.

Engine

- If the engine do not be started for a long time, the canister may be in saturation. The canister desorption should be regularly completed to avoid the risk of fuel leakage.
- If the vehicle is driven in EV mode for a long time, this function starts the engine and exits until the carbon tank load meets the requirements.

Engine Cylinder Cleaning

- In severe cold areas, failure to start the engine may cause engine cylinder flooding, so it is necessary to carry out cylinder cleaning:

  1. When the OK indicator stays on, the working mode is EV, the vehicle is in ECO mode, and the engine is not running, switch from Park to Neutral.

  2. Engage EPB, press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate cylinder cleaning.

Engine Oil

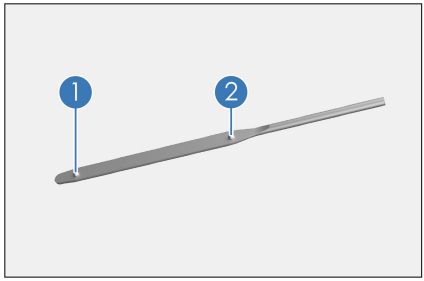
- Be sure to use engine oil that meets the specified standards for this vehicle.
- When purchasing engine oil, check the specifications indicated on the package to ensure that they meet the vehicle's requirements.

Recommended engine oil

- Engine oil plays a crucial role in ensuring engine performance and service life, so always use high-quality, well-refined engine oil to ensure reliable operation. It is recommended to use BYD genuine engine oil.
- Engine oil consumption may vary depending on driving habits, weather conditions, and road conditions. A new engine may consume more oil during the break-in period.

Check engine oil

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature, then turn it off.
2. After shutdown for 10 minutes, remove the right cover plate, pull out the oil dipstick, and check whether the oil level is between markers ① and ②. Add or replace engine oil as needed.
3. Reinsert the oil dipstick.



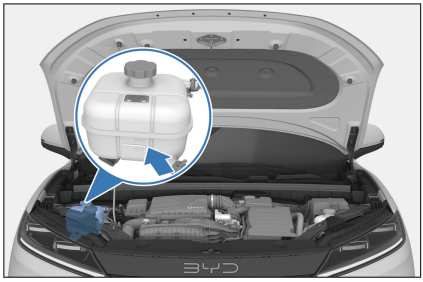
- When the low oil pressure warning light is on, add engine oil promptly.

WARNING

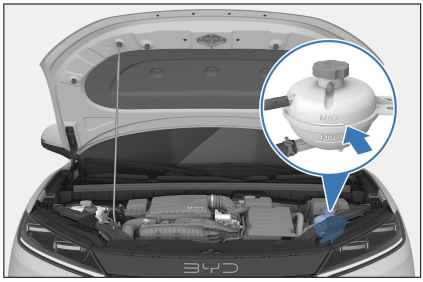
- Be careful not to spill engine oil onto any vehicle components.
- Engine oil, engine components, and the exhaust system become extremely hot during operation and may cause burns. Always wear protective clothing and handle components carefully when working in the engine compartment.
- Prolonged or repeated contact with used engine oil may cause skin disorders. If oil comes into contact with your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and clean water.

Cooling System

- It is required that the liquid level should be between the maximum (MAX) and minimum (MIN) marker lines of the expansion tank.
  - Engine expansion tank



- Motor and motor controller expansion tank



- Refill coolant to the MAX line if the level is below the MIN line. Check the cooling system for leakage.
- The coolant must always be of the same specification as the original, without adding any mixture. Different brands and types of coolant should not be mixed.

REMINDER

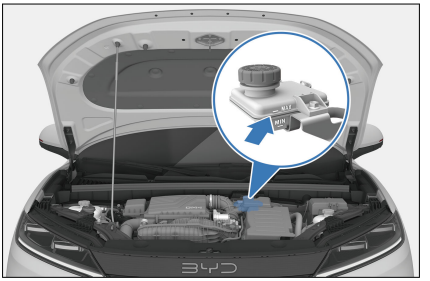
- Do not add any rust inhibitor or other additives to the cooling system for they may be incompatible with the coolant or the motor components.
- Before opening the expansion tank, make sure that the engine, motor, high-voltage electronic control assembly, expansion tank cap, and radiator are all cooled down.

REMINDER

- Do not open the top cover of the under-hood PDB when adding the coolant.
- Fill the coolant with professional tools to prevent the liquid from flowing into the PDB.

Braking System

- Check the level in the fluid tank monthly, and change the brake fluid according to the travel time and mileage specified in Maintenance Schedule.
- Be sure to use the brake fluid of the same specifications as the original brake fluid, and different types of brake fluid must not be mixed.
- It is required that the level in the fluid tank should be between "MAX" (maximum level) and "MIN" (minimum level) marks.
- If the level is below the MIN mark, check if the braking system leaks and the brake friction blocks are worn.



- Effects of high-altitude environments on brake fluid:
  - Atmospheric pressure decreases as altitude increases, which may increase the air content in the brake fluid and cause the brake system

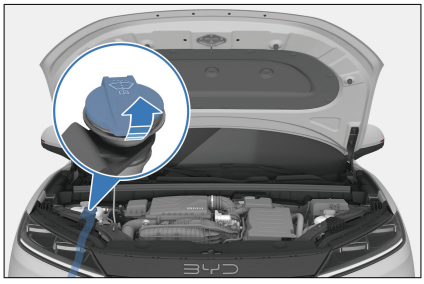
malfunction warning light (!) to illuminate. Before driving in high-altitude areas, have the intelligent power braking system properly bled at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If the braking system is not bled before driving in high-altitude areas, the brake pedal may feel soft and braking distance may increase during driving. In severe cases, vehicle power may be limited. Drive with caution.

Windshield Washer

- During normal use, check the liquid level of the windshield washer reservoir at least monthly.
- If the windshield washer is used frequently, the level of the washer reservoir should be checked more frequently.
- High quality windshield washer fluid should be added to improve stain removal and prevent freezing in cold weather.



- When you add washer fluid to the fluid reservoir again, use a piece of clean cloth dipped with windshield washer fluid to clean the windshield wiper blade, which helps keep the blade edge in good condition.

CAUTION

- Do not inject vinegar-water solution or acid solution into the windshield washer fluid reservoir.
- It is recommended to use certified windshield washer fluid.

A/C System

- The A/C system is a closed system, and any important maintenance work should be performed by professionals from a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The following practices help ensure that the A/C system works effectively.
  - Check the radiator and A/C condenser regularly. Remove leaves, insects, and dust from the front surface. These deposits will hinder the air flow and reduce the cooling effect. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
  - In cold months, turn the A/C on once a week for at least 10 minutes to circulate the lubricating oil in the refrigerant unit.
- If A/C cooling efficiency decreases, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

CAUTION

- Whenever the A/C system is maintained, the maintenance station should use a refrigerant recycling system.
- The system can recycle refrigerants to avoid environmental pollution caused

CAUTION

by directly discharging the refrigerant.

Wiper Blades

The blade strip, made of synthetic rubber, is a vulnerable part. Various service environment of the vehicle and usage habits of drivers can damage the blades. Therefore, please observe the following to ensure the service life of blades and driving safety:

- Do not use a blade to remove ice from the windshield surface. Use a customized ice scraper.
- Do not scrape the windshield surface if it is dirty, greasy or waxy.
- Keep the windshield surface clean. Do not scrape dust, sand, insects, or foreign bodies on the windshield surface.
- Do not wax the windshield when washing the vehicle and maintaining the body paint, as the wax layer reflects light in poor light, consequently affecting the sight and driving safety. After washing the vehicle, rinse the blade with plain water, and use special windscreen wax cleaner to remove the wax layer on the windshield.
- To prevent excessive water pressure from damaging the blades, do not wash the blades directly with a water jet.

Maintenance Rules

- Clean windshield and blade regularly (preferably once a week or once every two weeks).
- Wipe the wiper regularly (preferably once a day or once every two days). When using a blade to wipe the windshield, keep the windshield fully wet. (When there is no rain, the washer liquid must be sprayed in advance).
- Clean the windshield with a special windshield washer fluid.
- Promptly clean mud and insect carcasses stuck to the windshield with a rag.
- When there are marks on the windshield caused by gravel, maintenance must be carried out timely. (It is recommended that windshield repair resin products should be used and the windshield should be replaced if marks are too large or too many.)
- Replace the wiper blades regularly, preferably once every six months.
- When cleaning the windshield, raise the wiper arm in advance. The specific operation method is as follows:

  1. Go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Service** → **Overhaul** to enable wiper maintenance. The wiper is then rotated down.
  2. Grasp the upper end of the wiper arm and carefully lift the wiper arm and blade assembly.

Tires

- For safe driving, tires must be made and sized to fit the vehicle, with good tread and standard tire pressure.

WARNING

- Using tires with excessive wear or insufficient/excessive pressure

WARNING

can result in accidents, severe injury, or death.

- Please follow all instructions in this manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Tire Inflation

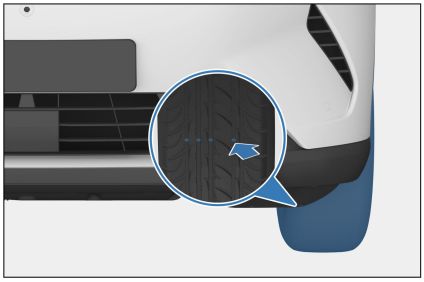
- Keep tires properly inflated to provide the best combination of maneuverability, tread life, and driving comfort.
- Under-inflated tires can cause uneven tire wear, affect steerability and energy consumption, and are prone to leakage due to overheating.
- Over-inflated tires reduce riding comfort and are prone to damage from uneven roads. In severe cases, the risk of tire bursting poses severe threats to the safety of the entire vehicle. Over-inflation will also cause uneven wear and tear of tires, affecting tire service life.
- When tires are cold, you can decide whether to replenish tire pressure according to the tire pressure values displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Tire pressure should be measured while tires are at ambient temperatures. This means that it should be measured at least three hours after stop. If you must drive the vehicle before the tire pressure is measured, tires can still be considered at ambient temperatures as long as the traveled distance is not more than 1.6 km.
- It is normal that tire pressure reading measured while tires are hot (after travel of several kilometers) is 30-40 kPa (0.3~0.4 bar) higher than when tires are cold. In that case, do not deflate tires in order to achieve the specified cold tire pressure reading; otherwise, the tire pressure will be insufficient.

REMINDER

- The recommended cold tire pressure is indicated on the label affixed to the driver's door frame.
- Tubeless tires have a self-sealing function when they are punctured. However, because in fact usually there is a very slow air leak, as soon as the tire begins to depressurize, carefully look for the leak location.

Tire inspection

- Whenever checking tire inflation, check tires for damage, foreign body piercing and wear.
  - Replace the tire if bumps, or tread or side damage are found. Tires must be replaced if any of the cases happens.
  - Replace the tire if there are cracks on its side or if its fabric or cord can be seen.
  - Replace tires with excessive tread wear.
- Tire treads are cast with wear bars. When the tread is even with the wear bar, its thickness is less than 1.6 mm. The adhesion of tires worn to this extent is very small on wet roads.



- Tires with exposed wear bars are experiencing serious performance loss and therefore must be replaced.

Maintenance

- In addition to proper inflation, proper wheel alignment also helps reduce tread wear.
- If uneven tire wear is found, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider and check the wheel alignment.
- Although the vehicle has been balanced in the factory, it needs to be re-balanced after running for a period of time.
- If there is some kind of continuous vibration at high vehicle speeds (above 80 km/h), but not at low vehicle speeds, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for tire checks.
- If a tire has been repaired, be sure to re-balance it.
- After installing a new tire or replacing a new wheel, always perform tire balancing.

CAUTION

- Improper wheel balancers can become loose and fall off, which damages the vehicle or surrounding objects during vehicle travel.

CAUTION

- Improper wheel balancers damage the aluminium rims of the vehicle. Therefore, it is recommended to use original wheel balancers.

Tire Rotation

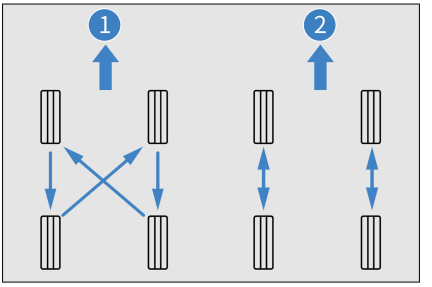
- In order to make tires wear the same and prolong their service life, it is recommended to check the wear of the tire inner and outer tread every 10,000 km and conduct four-wheel alignment, inspection and adjustment as well. Rotate the tires if necessary.
- Do not rotate tires when a spare tire* is used for the vehicle.
- After tire replacement, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for tire pressure matching.

Directional tires and wheels

- When purchasing replacement tires, you may find that some tires are "directional", which can only be rotated in one direction. If directional tires are used, only the front and rear wheels can be swapped in tire rotation.
- Tire rotation is as shown:

① Non-directional tires and wheels

② Directional tires and wheels.



Replacing Tires and Wheels

- Original tires maximize performance, while providing the best combination of maneuverability, driving comfort and service life.
- It is recommended to replace with original tires at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Replacement of tires with different sizes, road ranges, rated speeds and maximum cold pressures (marked on the tire side) or mixed use of radial tires and diagonal tires can reduce braking ability, driving force (ground adhesion) and steering accuracy.
- Unsuitable tires affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may lead to accidents.
- Do not replace only one tire; otherwise it will severely affect the maneuverability of the vehicle.
- ABS works by comparing wheel speed. When replacing a tire, use a tire of the same size as the original tire. The size and structure of the tire affect wheel speed and may lead to uncoordinated system operation.
- If the wheel needs to be replaced, ensure that the specifications of the new wheel match those of the original wheel (wheel hub nut torque: 130±13N·m). New wheels are available for purchase at BYD authorized dealer or service providers. Please consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider before replacing the wheels.

WARNING

- Please observe the following precautions to ensure proper vehicle maneuverability and control.

WARNING

- Do not mix radial tires, bias belted tires, or diagonal ply tires on the vehicle.
- Do not use tires with dimensions other than those recommended by the manufacturer.

Fuses

All vehicle circuits are provided with fuses to prevent short circuit or overloading. These fuses are mounted in the under-hood power distribution box (PDB) and the dashboard PDB, respectively.

- The under-hood PDB is located beside the left fender of the engine compartment.
  - Remove the upper cover of the under-hood fuse box, and turn over it to view the fuse box label.
- The dashboard PDB is located in the shield under the dashboard.
- The anode fuse box is located above the low-voltage battery.
- Replacement of blown fuses with ones of higher amperage can significantly increase the likelihood of damage to the electrical system.
- If there is no spare fuse of the same amperage, use a fuse with lower amperage instead.

REMINDER

- Do not use fuses with amperage higher than the rated ampere value or any other solution to replace the fuses, as this can cause serious damage or even a fire.

07 WHEN FAULTS OCCUR

When Faults Occur.....216

When Faults Occur

Reflective Vest

- The reflective vest is in the tool kit. In case of emergency, always wear the reflective vest properly before you check for faults or handle accidents to ensure your safety.

If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted

If the smart key indicator does not flash and the vehicle cannot be started using the start function, the smart key battery may be exhausted. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for battery change as soon as possible. In this case, you may start the vehicle in no power mode.

CAUTION

- Do not place the smart key in a position exposed to high temperature.
- Do not hit or slam the key with hard objects.
- Check for nearby radio stations, substations or airport radio transmitters that may interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
- After locking the vehicle and arming its anti-theft alarm system, keep the key away from the vehicle if you do not use the vehicle; otherwise the automatic card finding of the vehicle will consume the power of the low-voltage battery and the smart key.

Starting the vehicle when the electronic smart key runs out of battery:

1. Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.
2. Hold the smart key close to the designated sensor area at the bottom of the front left cup holder.
3. Press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button to start the vehicle.



If a High Voltage Fault Occurs

If a fault occurs and the instrument cluster displays "Low-voltage electrical system failure. Please park safely and contact a service center", pull over to a safe location immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for assistance.

If the Vehicle Cannot Be Powered On

Simple Checks

Before the inspection, make sure that the vehicle has been started following the correct procedures (see ***P107***) and check whether the fuel is sufficient. Also, check if the spare key can start the vehicle. If it can be started, the original key may have been damaged. Contact a BYD authorized

dealer or service provider. If all keys cannot be used, the key or smart key system may fail. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

If the vehicle does not respond after pressing the key

1. Press and hold the microswitch for 10 seconds to see if the vehicle or the instrument cluster responds.
2. If there is no response from the vehicle or the instrument cluster, check whether the low-voltage battery connectors are tight.
3. If the low-voltage battery has been tightened, turn on the front interior lights. If the interior lights do not turn on or are dim, the low-voltage battery is low.
4. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

If the motor drives the engine to crank at a normal speed but the engine fails to start

1. Try starting the vehicle again.
2. If the engine still fails to start, it may be caused by fuel flooding due to repeated starting attempts, a malfunction in the battery management system) module, or a failure in the motor module or other related components.
3. If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Starting the Engine After Fuel Flooding

- If the engine fails to start, repeated starting attempts may cause fuel flooding.
- If the engine becomes flooded, perform the following operations manually:

  1. When the "OK" indicator stays on, the vehicle is in ECO mode, and the engine is stopped, manually switch the gear to Neutral.
  2. Press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder clearing function.

- f the engine does not start after cranking for about five seconds, wait for several minutes and then try again.
- If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- If the engine fails to start repeatedly and the prompt "Engine start failed, please drive to safe area and stop to check" is displayed on the instrument cluster, do not to restart the engine, otherwise the generator and wiring system will overheat.

If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving

- Maintain the lane position and gradually slow down the vehicle. Carefully drive the vehicle off the road to a safe place
- and turn on the hazard warning light.
- Try to start the engine again.

If the Engine Is Overheated

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light turns on and power loss is found, it indicates that the engine is overheated. Follow the instructions below:

1. Drive the vehicle away from heavy traffic and park in a safe place. Turn on the hazard warning light, engage EPB, and shift into Park. Turn off the A/C and place a warning triangle behind the vehicle according to the local regulations.
2. If the "high engine coolant temperature" warning light turns on, stop the engine. If there is a sound and the coolant sprays out in the engine compartment, open the engine hood after the steam disappears. If no coolant is sprayed, confirm whether the cooling fan is working before and after the engine stops. If the fan is not working, turn off the power.

REMINDER

- To avoid personal injury, keep the hood closed until no coolant flows out. The flow of coolant indicates high pressure of the engine.

3. Check the radiator, hose and vehicle underneath for obvious coolant leakage.

WARNING

- When the engine is running, keep hands and clothes at a certain distance from the rotating fan and engine pulley.

4. In case of coolant leakage, stop the engine immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
5. If there is no obvious leakage, check the expansion tank. If coolant is insufficient, be sure to wait for the engine coolant to cool down to the normal range of temperature before opening the expansion tank. While the engine is running, add coolant to the upper scale mark, tighten the cap, and then start the engine for two to three cycles (start the fan without turning on the A/C). After the coolant temperature drops to the normal range, check the coolant level again. If necessary, add more coolant to the appropriate scale. A serious loss of coolant indicates a leakage. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection immediately.

WARNING

- To avoid serious injury from high-temperature steam and liquid ejection, do not open the expansion tank when the engine or radiator is still hot.

Do not use the A/C for an extended period while the vehicle is parked, as it may cause the engine speed to increase and lead to engine overheating, which could result in a fire or accident.

If the Vehicle Needs Towing

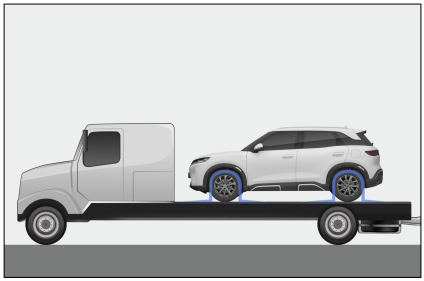
If the vehicle needs towing, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider, a professional towing service, or the organization you joined for roadside assistance.

WARNING

- The vehicle must not be towed by other vehicles using only ropes or chains.

Recommended transporting method:

- Flatbed device
  - If the vehicle fails and needs towing, a flatbed is recommended. When the vehicle is being towed, keep its four wheels off the ground. Towing the vehicle on front or rear wheels alone may damage high-voltage components.



CAUTION

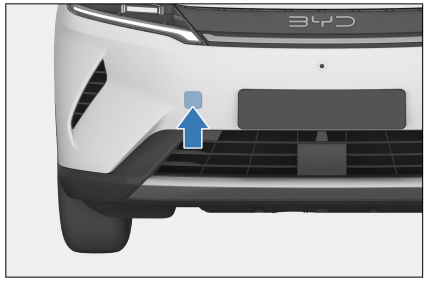
- When moving a vehicle on a flat trailer, make sure that the vehicle being moved is properly secured to prevent it from sliding back.
- It is recommended to use professional tie-down straps and tensioners, and employ the over-the-wheel method to secure the vehicle.
- When fixing the vehicle, do not pass the fixtures such as straps and ropes through the wheels or tie them on the chassis, suspension and other body parts to prevent damaging the vehicle.

CAUTION

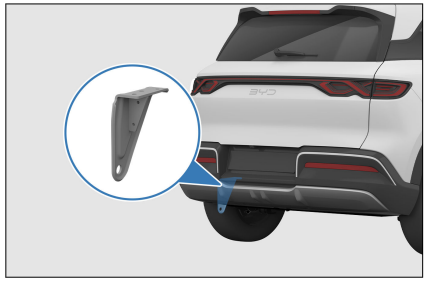
- Ensure the vehicle's wheels are immobilized during transport to prevent potential damage.

Tow Eye

The front mounting point is shown in the illustration.



The rear* mounting point is shown in the illustration.



- If the vehicle needs rescue, contact a professional rescue or the customer service number.
- In emergency situations where the vehicle needs to be towed for rescue, follow the precautions below. If these precautions conflict with applicable regulations, always adhere to applicable regulations to prevent vehicle damage or personal injury.
  - The towing vehicle must be in good conditions and the towed vehicle in

Neutral gear. The towing speed must be no more than 5km/h.

- Never use jerking actions to pull the vehicle.
- The towed vehicle must not carry any person except for the driver.
- Both towing and towed vehicles must have their hazard warning lights on.
- To avoid damages to the vehicle, only the in-vehicle tow eye can be used.
- The distance between the towing and towed vehicles must be more than 4 meters but less than 10 meters.
- The width and weight of the towed vehicle must not be greater than those of the towing vehicle.
- When towing, ensure the surroundings are clear and spacious, and that no one is near the towing device.
- When freeing the vehicle, control to make it travel in the direction of tow force. Dragging the vehicle from the side or vertically is prohibited.
- The towed vehicle must be controlled by a driver inside the cabin, with the steering and braking systems in normal conditions.

WARNING

- Never rescue a stuck or high-centered vehicle with tow eyes. Call a professional rescue or the customer service number.
- If the steering or braking system of the towed vehicle fails, contact a professional rescue or call the customer service number. Do not tow the vehicle directly.

If a Tire Goes Flat

- In case of a flat tire, slow down, keep straight, and drive off the busy road to a safe place.
- Park on solid, flat ground and avoid motorway forks.
- Engage EPB and shift into Park.
- Power off the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning light.
- Be sure to have all passengers get off the vehicle and ask them to go to a safe place away from crowded traffic.
- To prevent slipping, secure the vehicle by wedging the tire diagonally against the flat tire.

CAUTION

- Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Even a short distance of driving with a flat tire can cause irreparable damage.

In-Vehicle Tools

In-vehicle tools are stored in a tool box under the trunk cover flap.

These include: warning triangle, reflective vest, lug nut cap removal clamp, tire repair kit, and tow eye.

REMINDER

- In an emergency where you need to service the vehicle yourself, you must know how to use these in-vehicle tools and their locations.

Placing the Warning Triangle

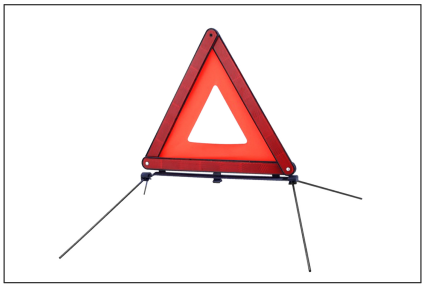
The warning triangle is used to warn vehicles coming from behind and to avoid collisions due to high speed or late braking.

REMINDER

- When parking for repair, remember to place a hazard warning sign in accordance with local codes. The red side of the triangular warning sign should face the oncoming vehicles to warn them to avoid danger.
- After use, recover the warning triangle for future use.

How to use the warning triangle:

1. Take the warning triangle out of its box.
2. Attach the ends to form a triangle.
3. Mount the supports as shown.



Using Tire Repair Kit*

- The tire sealant is used to seal small cuts, especially tread cuts or punctures. It is just an emergency solution for you to drive to the nearest service center, and only for short emergency stretches, even if the tire is not deflated.

WARNING

- The tire sealant is only suitable for repairing minor damages of tires. If a wheel is damaged, do not use the tire sealant.

WARNING

- Tire sealant is highly flammable and harmful to health. Take necessary precautions to prevent fire and avoid contact with skin, eyes, and clothing; keep away from children; and do not inhale its vapor.

In case of contact with tire sealant:

- If tire sealant comes into contact with the skin or gets into the eyes, thoroughly flush the affected body part immediately with plenty of clean water.
- Change contaminated clothing immediately.
- In case of an allergic reaction, seek medical attention immediately.
- If tire sealant is ingested by accident, rinse mouth thoroughly and drink plenty of water immediately. Do not induce vomiting, but seek medical attention immediately.

Using the tire repair kit

- Refer to the labels on the inflator and tire sealant bottle for usage of the kit.
- If the inflator needs to be connected to a power source, plug the inflator into the vehicle's 12 V socket, start the vehicle, and turn on the inflator. The tire sealant is then filled through the inflator hose into the tire along with air.

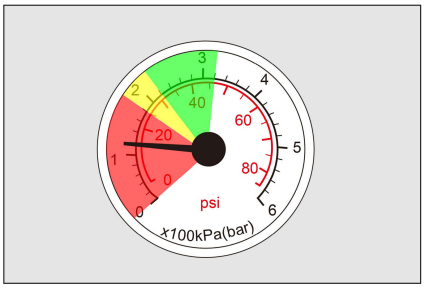
REMINDER

- Make sure the inflator switch is off before plugging into the 12V socket of the vehicle.

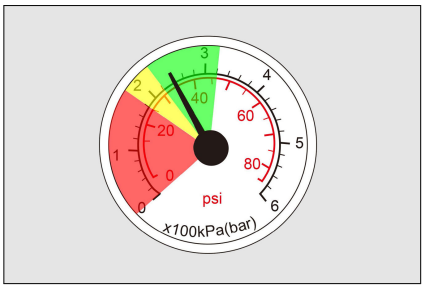
REMINDER

- Do not use the inflator continuously for more than 10 minutes at a time.

- Observe the tire pressure reading on the inflator.
  - If the tire pressure does not reach 180 kPa (1.8 bar) within 10 minutes (red area shown in the illustration), turn off the inflator. You are recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.



- When the tire pressure is between 180–320 kPa (1.8–3.2 bar) (green and yellow areas shown in the illustration), remove the kit as soon as possible and drive at a speed below 80 km/h within one minute, with the furthest driving distance not exceeding 10 km, to let the tire sealant evenly distributed within the tire.



- Stop to check the repaired tire and the tire pressure reading on the inflator.
  - If the tire pressure is greater than 220 kPa (2.2 bar), drive to the nearest service center at a speed below 80 km/h.
  - If the tire pressure is between 130–220 kPa (1.3–2.2 bar), repeat the process to fill the tire sealant into the tire and observe the tire pressure gauge reading on the inflator.
  - If the tire pressure does not reach 130 kPa (1.3 bar), contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- Using tire repair kit on damaged tires is only an emergency solution. Please change the tires at a professional repair center as soon as possible. It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider and inform the maintenance technician that tire sealant has been used.
- After the use of the tire repair kit, it is recommended to purchase new tire sealant and inflation hoses at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Avoid hard acceleration and high-speed turns.
- Do not exceed the 80 km/h maximum speed limit and replace flat tires as soon as possible. Do not drive further if the vehicle experiences strong vibration, unstable performance, or noise.
- Avoid impact or compression of the tire sealant to ensure stable performance.
- It is recommended to replace the tire sealant when it approaches

REMINDER

the shelf life on the packaging, or has been impacted/compressed.

08 TECHNICAL DATA

Vehicle Data..... 226
Other Information..... 230
Declarations of Conformity..... 233

Vehicle Data

Specifications

Dimensions

Item	Parameter
Length (mm)	4330
Width (mm, excluding side mirrors)	1830
Height (mm)	1675
Wheelbase (mm)	2620
Front track (mm)	1580
Rear track (mm)	1570
Front overhang (mm)	883
Rear overhang (mm)	827
Approach angle (°)	18
Departure angle (°)	23

Vehicle mass

Item	Parameter	
Product Version	**A**	**B**
Curb weight (kg)	1510	1620
Front axle load (kg)	930	965
Rear axle load (kg)	580	655
Maximum allowable total mass (kg)	2000	2110
Front axle load at maximum allowable total mass (kg)	1030	1080
Rear axle load at maximum allowable total mass (kg)	970	1030
Number of occupants (persons)	5	

Engine

Item	Parameter
Model	BYD472QA
Type	Four-stroke ignition
Displacement (L)	1.498
Rated power (kW/rpm)	72/6000
Maximum net power (kW/rpm)	72/6000
Maximum torque (N·m/rpm)	122/(4000–4500)
Emission standard	EU 6D

High-voltage battery

Item	Parameter	
Product Version	**A**	**B**
Type	Lithium iron phosphate battery	
High-voltage battery rated capacity (Ah)	41	54

Drive motor

Item	Parameter
Model	TZ220XYE
Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Drive type	Front-wheel drive
Rated power/speed/torque (kW/rpm/N·m)	60/4775/120
Peak power/revolving speed/torque (kW/rpm/N·m)	145/15000/300

Vehicle power performance and economic efficiency

Item	Parameter	
Product Version	**A**	**B**
Maximum design speed (km/h)	180	
Maximum gradeability (%)	30	

Item	Parameter	
Product Version	A	B
Fuel consumption (L/100km)	5.6 (WLTC)	

Wheels and tires

Item	Parameter	
Product Version	A	B
Tire specification	215/65 R16	215/60 R17
Tire pressure (kPa)	250	
Wheel dynamic balance requirement (g)	＜ 10	

Wheel alignment values (at curb weight)

Item	Parameter
Front camber (°)	-0.52±0.75
Total front wheel toe-in (°)	0.34±0.16
Kingpin inclination angle (°)	12.09±0.75
Kingpin caster angle (°)	4.69±0.75
Rear camber (°)	-1.37±0.75
Total rear wheel toe-in (°)	0.11±0.50

Braking system

Item	Parameter
Free stroke of brake pedal (mm)	1–5
Standard thickness of front brake disc (mm)	26
Minimum thickness of front brake disc (mm)	24
Standard thickness of rear brake disc (mm)	10
Minimum thickness of rear brake disc (mm)	8
Standard thickness of front friction plate (mm)	10
Minimum thickness of front friction plate (mm)	2

Item	Parameter
Standard thickness of rear friction plate (mm)	8.5
Minimum thickness of rear friction plate (mm)	2.5

Seats

Item	Parameter
Seatback angle set for front seats	23°±1°
Forward and backward moving spaces for front seats	200 mm forward and 60 mm backward from designed position; slide rail inclination: 4.5°
Normal service conditions of front seatbacks	7.5° forward and 41° backward from the designed position
Seatback angle set for rear seats	27°±1°
Forward and backward moving spaces for rear seats	4.25° forward
Normal service conditions of rear seatbacks	27°±1°

Recommended oil/fluid types and amount

Item	Parameter
Engine oil type for BYD472QA	C5/SP 0W-20 or higher
Engine oil amount for BYD472QA (L)	3.2 (with engine oil filter replacement) 3.0 (without engine oil filter replacement)
EHS special transmission gear oil type	Idemitsu EHSF-2LV
EHS special transmission gear oil amount (L)	After replacement: 3.5 After overhaul: 4.1
Brake fluid type	HZY6
Brake fluid amount (mL)	780±50
Motor and motor controller coolant type	Ethylene glycol aqueous solution
Motor and motor controller coolant amount (L)	4.7±0.5
Engine coolant type	Ethylene glycol aqueous solution

Item	Parameter
Engine coolant amount (L)	7.0±0.5

CAUTION

- The recommended oil types have been tested and approved by BYD. Using other oil types may compromise vehicle performance, and could cause malfunctions or damage to components.

Other Information

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

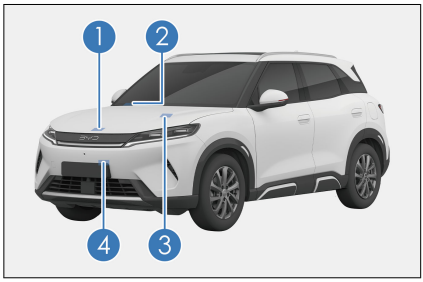
Positions of attached VIN:

① Besides the lock ring of the front hood inner panel

② On the right of the front windshield cross sill

③ On the back of the rear motor

④ On the front bumper beam

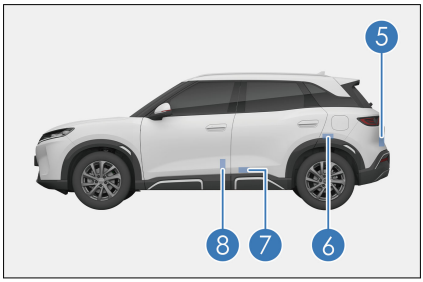


⑤ On the inner panel of the trunk lid

⑥ On the sheet metal surface of the left rear wheel envelope

⑦ On the sheet metal surface inside the left rear door sill

⑧ On the sheet metal surface at the lower left corner of the front left door



Position of engraved VIN:

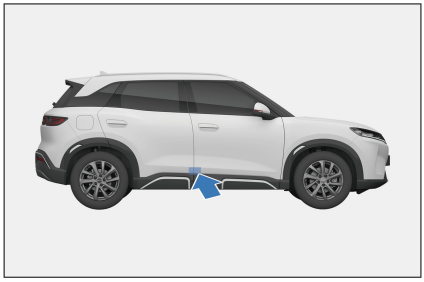
VIN is engraved under the front right seat.

After connecting the VDS, Vehicle Identification Number(VIN) can be found in the upper right corner of the screen for the corresponding model. For details, please refer to the VDS operation manual.



Vehicle Nameplate

The vehicle nameplate is located on the lower part of the right B-pillar.



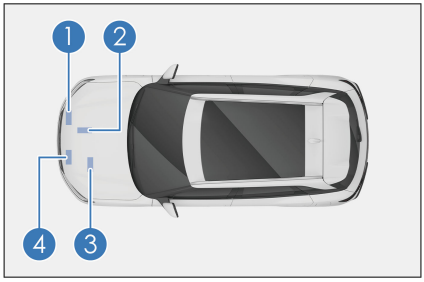
Model and Serial Number of Engine and Drive Motor

① The engine model and serial number are affixed to the right of the hood latch on the inner panel of the hood.

② The engine model and serial number are engraved on the intake side of the cylinder block joint surface.

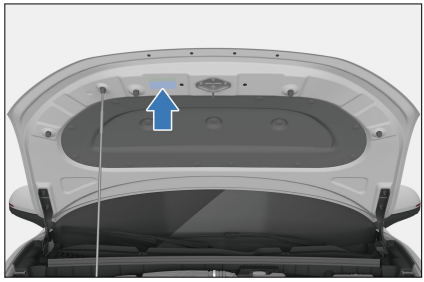
③ The drive motor model and serial number are engraved on the motor housing.

④ The drive motor model and serial number are affixed to the left of the hood latch on the inner panel of the hood.

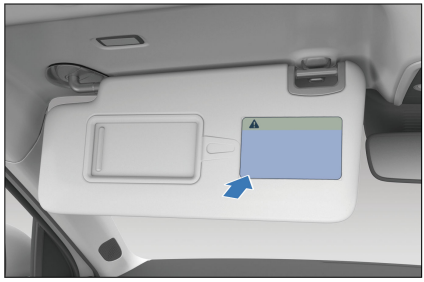


Warning Labels

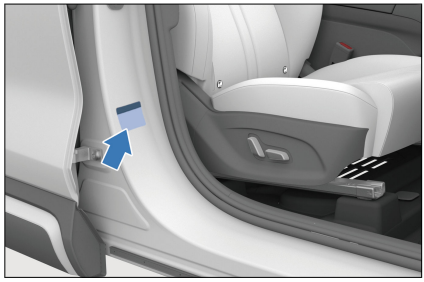
A/C system and cooling fan sticker



The airbag warning label is printed on the left sun visor.



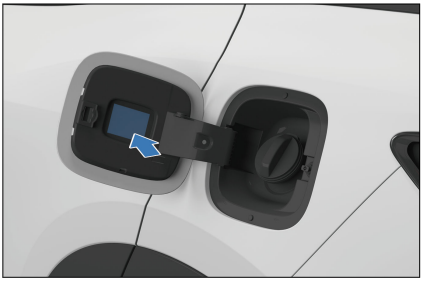
The tire pressure label is attached below the right B-pillar lock ring.



The child protection lock label is engraved on the metal sheet surface on the left/right rear door.



The gasoline indication label is attached on the inner side of the fuel door.



The charging warning label is attached on the inside of the charge port door.



Warnings on Strut Mechanisms

Support mechanisms on this vehicle can be dangerous. Do not disassemble or service them yourself. Labels on these products are defined as follows:

Label	Definition
	Warning
	Pressurized cylinder
	Refer to owner's manual
	No open flame
	Not to be serviced by users
	Recycle separately (Note: Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.)

Label	Definition
	No shaking or cranking

Transponder Mounting Position

The transponder mounting position is located in the upper left of the front windshield.



CAUTION

- Do not overlap the sticker transponder with the glass frame or other objects.

Declarations of Conformity

Declarations of Conformity

Smart Key

	Uzbekistan Model: D1-92
	EU countries Model: D1-92
	Brazil Model: D1-92

	This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and does not cause interference to duly authorized systems.
	Japan Model: D1-315

Numerics

12 V Auxiliary Power..... 188

A

A/C System Maintenance..... 209
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)..... 159
Adaptive Cruise Control*..... 126
Adaptive Front Light (AFL)*..... 72
Adjusting Side Mirrors..... 69
Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually..... 65
Airbag Overview..... 14
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 30
Around View Monitor (AVM)*..... 160
Auto Power On/Off*..... 109
Automatic Emergency Braking*... 140
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)..... 116
Automatic Vehicle Washing..... 201

B

Blind Spot Detection*..... 150
Brake Fluid..... 208
Break-in Period..... 97

C

Carrying Luggage..... 103
Center Console Cubby..... 186
Charging Port Immobilizer System 92
Charging Precautions..... 81
Charging Safety Warnings..... 80
Check Before Charging..... 84
Child Protection Lock..... 58
Child Restraint System..... 21
Coolant..... 207
Corrosion Prevention..... 198

D

Data Collection and Processing..... 31
Discharging Instructions*..... 89
Door Bins..... 186
Door Open Warning..... 151
Driving..... 109
Driving Precautions..... 117
Driving Safety Precautions..... 99
Driving Safety Systems..... 166

E

Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)*..... 147
Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key..... 56
Engaging EPB Manually..... 113
Engine Oil..... 207
EPB Switch..... 113
Eyeglass Case*..... 186

F

Fire Prevention..... 106
Front Collision Warning*..... 136
Front Cup Holders..... 187
Front Interior Lights..... 76
Fuel Selection..... 100
Fuel-Efficient Driving..... 111
Function Definition..... 182
Fuses..... 213

G

Gear Shift Controls..... 112
General Charging Troubleshooting 83
Glove Box..... 186
Grab Handles..... 187

H

Hazard Warning Light Switch..... 75

High-Voltage Battery..... 94

I

If a Tire Goes Flat..... 220
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted 216
If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving..... 217
If the Vehicle Needs Towing..... 218
Indicators/Warning Lights..... 37
Indicators/Warning Lights Description..... 39
Infotainment Touchscreen..... 172
Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)*... 134
Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)*..... 136
Interior Cleaning..... 201
Interior Rearview Mirror..... 69
Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode..... 25

L

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)*..... 144
LCD Instrument Cluster..... 36
Light Switches..... 70
Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key..... 52
Low-Voltage Battery..... 96

M

Maintenance Cycle and Items..... 192
Maintenance Plan..... 192
Maintenance Schedule Requirements 192
Manual Vehicle Washing..... 200

O

Opening and Closing the Hood.... 206
Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts..... 45

P

Paint Maintenance Tips..... 199
Parking Assist System..... 163
PIN to Drive*..... 30
Power Window Switches..... 73

R

Rear Collision Warning*..... 153
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)*.... 155
Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB)*.... 156
Refueling..... 100
Regular Maintenance..... 197
Replacing Wiper Blades..... 68
Reversing View*..... 161
Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning..... 104

S

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life..... 102
Seat Belt Overview..... 12
Seat Precautions..... 59
Seatback Pockets..... 187
Self-Maintenance..... 203
Smart Access and Start System..... 57
Smart Charging..... 87
Smart Key..... 48
Snow Chains..... 119
Starting the Vehicle..... 107
Steering Assist Mode Settings..... 66
Steering Wheel Switches..... 63
Suggestions for Vehicle Use..... 99
Sun Visor..... 187

T

Target SOC Setting..... 91
Tire..... 210
Tire Pressure Monitoring..... 158
Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)*.... 143

Transponder Mounting Position.. 233

U

USB Ports..... 188
Using AC Charging Piles*..... 86
Using Mode 2 Charging Cable*..... 84
Using Seat Belts..... 12

V

Vehicle Cleaning..... 199
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 230
Vehicle Servicing..... 198
Vehicle Storage Precautions..... 205

W

Wading into Water..... 105
Warning Labels..... 231
Window Control Switch on Passenger Side..... 75
Windshield Washer..... 209
Windshield Wipers and Washer..... 66
Wiper Blades..... 210
Wireless Phone Charger*..... 188

Abbreviations

Abbreviations

Terminology	Full Name	Terminology	Full Name
EDR	Event Data Recorder	EPB	Electronic Parking Brake
AVH	Auto Vehicle Hold	ECU	Electronic Control Unit
HEV	Hybrid Electric Vehicles	EV	Electric Vehicle
NORMAL	Normal	SPORT	Sport
ECO	Economy	MAX	Maximum
SOC	State of Charge	ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control
FCW	Forward Collision Warning	TSR	Traffic Sign Recognition
ELKA	Emergent Lane Keeping Assist	LDP	Lane Departure Prevention
LDW	Lane Departure Warning	LDA	Lane Departure Assist
RCTB	Rear Cross Traffic Braking	DOW	Door Open Warning
BSD	Blind Spot Detection	TPMS	Tire Pressure Monitoring System
AVM	Around View Monitor	AVAS	Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System
TCS	Traction Control System	MCB	Multi-Collision Brake
ABS	Antilock Braking System	ESC	Electronic Stability Controller
VDC	Vehicle Dynamics Control	HHC	Hill Hold Control
MIN	Minimum	HBA	Hydraulic Brake Assist
HDC	Hill Descent Control	CDP	Controlled Deceleration for Parking Brake
CST	Comfort Parking	VIN	Vehicle Identification Number